

THE COMPLETE DECK OFFICERS, RYA, AYF, AND SA SAILING SYLLABUS

MILLENNIUM



2000

**CELESTIAL  
NAVIGATION**  
for  
**DECK OFFICERS**  
and for  
**YACHTMASTERS**  
**OCEAN**

A South African Maritime Safety Authority  
Approved Course

**Part 1 - NAVIGATION**

By  
Henton Jaaback  
*Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc*  
Cape Town

This document contains proprietary information which is protected by copyright. All rights are reserved. No part of this document may be photocopied, reproduced, or translated without the written permission of YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICES.

---

**Written with the 'D.I.Y.' learner in mind for 'self teaching'.**

Edition Number 1, May 1991.

Edition Number 2, December 1991.

Edition Number 3, January 1994.

Reprint, July 1994, February 1995, August 1996, February 1997, May 1999.

**INCLUDED: NAUTICAL ALMANAC AND SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES  
EXTRACTS INCLUDED WITH EXAMPLES' SOLUTIONS IN PART 2.**

By the same author:

***The Radiotelephone Operators' Restricted (Marine) Certificate Course.***

***Competent Crew/Yacht Hand Practical Course Notes.***

***Yacht Skipper (Local Waters) Practical Course Notes.***

***Competent Crew and Yacht Skipper, Part 1, (Inland Waters),  
and Part 2, (Local Waters)  
Shorebased Course.***

***Coastal Skipper/Yachtmaster Offshore  
- The Complete Syllabus Shorebased Course.***

***Astro Nav in Emergencies, for the Non-Navigator. (The GPS Back-Up.)***

All courses conform with the RYA, AYF and CASA syllabuses,  
and are S.A.M.S.A. approved.

Written to be the most comprehensive syllabus coverage course notes for an  
instructor to issue to his or her students.

PO Box 12181, Mill Street, 8010, South Africa. Tel (021) 462 3413 / 082 901 1296.

---

**HENTON JAABACK - YACHTMASTER OCEAN INSTRUCTOR - RYA AND CASA  
SKIPPER OF COMMERCIAL AND PLEASURE CRAFT UP TO 200 TONS  
SOUTH AFRICAN MARITIME SAFETY AUTHORITY DECK OFFICER CLASS 6  
(200 TONS), UK DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT APPROVED 200 TONS**

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

The RYA, AYF and CASA Syllabuses and This Course	ii
<b><u>PART 1</u></b>	
Chapter 1. The SEXTANT	1
2. The NOON or MERIDIAN PASSAGE SIGHT	11
3. The LOGIC OF NON-MERIDIAN PASSAGE SIGHTS	27
The Almanac for Sun's GHA and Dec	30
Sight Reduction Tables	33
'Concise' Tables (Almanac)	40
4. The SPHERICAL or PZX TRIANGLE	49
The "Sine/Cosine" method	53
5. PLOTTING LINES OF POSITION: POSITION FIXING	59
6. The MOON, PLANETS AND STARS	76
The Moon	76
Planets	80
Stars	87
Planning Star Sights	89
Precession and Nutation	97
7. POLARIS, the Pole Star	99
8. GREAT CIRCLE SAILING	105
9. COMPASS CHECKING	115
Appendix A: Use of Marine Sight Reduction Tables	119
<b><u>PART 2</u></b>	
Chapter 10. METEOROLOGY	201
Appendix A: Synoptic Chart; Northern North Atlantic Ocean	234
Appendix B: Synoptic Chart; Southern South Atlantic and Indian Oceans	235
Appendix C: Synoptic Chart of My Area	236
Appendix D: Weather Bulletin Schedule	237
Appendix E: Fog Prediction	238
Appendix F: Berg Winds	239
11. PASSAGE PLANNING AND PASSAGE MAKING	241
Appendix A: Suggested Victualling Record Layout	254
Appendix B: Duty Roster Example	255
12. SATELLITE NAVIGATION SYSTEMS	257
<b><u>GENERAL:</u></b>	
SOLUTIONS TO EXAMPLES IN PART 1	
EXTRACTS FROM THE NAUTICAL ALMANAC	
'The Card'/page A2	
Date pages	
Polaris Tables	
Concise Sight Reduction Tables	
"Yellow Pages"; Arc to Time Conversion Table	
Increments	
Altitude Correction Tables, Moon	
EXTRACTS FROM AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES	
EXTRACTS FROM AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES, 7 SELECTED STARS	

## **THE RYA, AYF AND CASA SYLLABUS**

The syllabuses for the Royal Yachting Association, Australian Yachting Federation, and SA Sailing/the Cruising Association of South Africa 'Yachtmaster Ocean' shorebased courses (there is no official practical Yachtmaster Ocean course) are almost identical. The syllabus, with recommended minimum time (in hours) to be spent on each aspect, and the detail of each, is contained in the RYA *YACHTSMAN'S LOGBOOK*, and is copied by the Australian and South African Associations.

### **THIS COURSE**

These course notes may be used as a D.I.Y. 'teach yourself' book, or with the course delivered by your course presenter. They are, nevertheless, complete notes and **no extra reading is necessary.**

### **WHAT TO GET**

Students working on their own will find all the Almanac and Sight Reduction reference tables, etc., they require are contained in this book. They will, however, need a parallel rule or a plotter, dividers, and a sharp pencil (2B is recommended) for plotting. Students attending formal classes should, if possible, bring their own:

1. Parallel rule or plotter (any type - the Breton or Hurst Plotters are recommended), and a set of navigator's dividers.

2. *Sight Reduction Tables for Air Navigation (Selected Stars)*, Publication Number 249, Volume 1. An epoch is a five year period, being two years before and two years after the year as shown on the cover. (It is rumoured these volumes are to become redundant soon, so another method of resolving star sights is preferable.)

3. Scientific calculator capable of processing trigonometric calculations. A programmed astro-navigation calculator is not accepted for examinations although they are ideal for use in daily navigation situations.

Note: For examination purposes, a candidate may use either a scientific calculator (non astro-navigation programmed type) or any Sight Reduction Tables method. (See 6. below).

4. A sextant if possible (two are available for loan), for the calibration lecture, which is normally on the first day of the course, and for the practical on Day 8 or Day 9, depending on the weather.

5. A sharp pointed soft lead pencil (2B is recommended) and eraser, for plotting.

6. In lieu of the 'concise' sight reduction tables in *The Nautical Almanac*, one may optionally choose to use:

- a. *Marine Sight Reduction Tables*, publication number NP 401, Volumes 1, 2, 3, etc. (one volume for each successive band of 16° of latitude - e.g. Vol 1, 0° to 15°; Vol 2, 15° to 30°). These books are expensive, bulky and heavy; they are only very slightly more accurate (less than 1 mile) and are a little more complicated to use).

- b. *Sight Reduction Tables for Air Navigation*, publication number 249. They can only be used for celestial observation resolutions where the declination of the body does not exceed 30°00'. They can therefore be used for sights of the sun, moon, and planets and some stars (providing the stars can be independently identified):
  - i. Volume 2 (Volume 1 was for stars - see 2. above). It is used when one is in any latitudes from 0° to 40°.
  - ii. Volume 3. For latitudes from 39° to 89°.
- c. Other Tables. As tables such as *Burton's* and *Norie's* are not commonly found on cruising yachts, their description has been omitted from this book. They nevertheless are tables from which sight resolutions, given the Almanac data, can be completed.

## **PRE-COURSE QUALIFICATIONS**

There are no, repeat NO pre-course certificated qualifications required for people wishing to attend this course. However, one should be at the standard of local Club qualified skipper or Skipper (Local Waters) and/or understand the elements of coastal navigation such as the Mercator and Gnomonic Projection charts, positions by Latitude and Longitude, the relationship of a minute of arc of a Great Circle being 1 nautical mile, etc. It does not matter therefore, if you have not yet done the test for Coastal Skipper. However if you intend to sit the Yachtmaster Ocean examination after this course, please be aware that:

1. In South Africa, you may not be allowed to sit the examination for a short period immediately after a course. At the time of writing, the period is one month. Check at your examining authority's offices.
2. You must either be qualified at Yachtmaster Offshore, or as it is in South Africa at the time of writing, successful examination candidates will be credited with a pass for up to six months during which time they must qualify at Yachtmaster Offshore standard. They will not be issued their Yachtmaster Ocean Certificates of Competence until they are in possession of a Yachtmaster Offshore Certificate of Competence.
3. An examination may not be necessary as some Associations (e.g. South Africa) allow the submission of proof of astro navigation experience in lieu of a test.

## **CERTIFICATES OF COMPLETION**

Attendance at this course, and satisfactory performance during the course, may qualify the candidate for the Association's course completion certificate which should be inserted in and become part of his or her personal Log Book.

## **QUERIES**

Henton's all-hours telephone and facsimile number is 'Cape Town (021) 462-3413', and any queries can be put to him at any reasonable time.

## **COPYRIGHT**

Henton retains all copyright for all material in this book and hereby grants permission to all students of his courses to use the work sheets. He also agrees to these students letting other people have sight of and use the work sheets UNCHANGED. If they are changed in any way, his name and that of *Yachtmaster Ocean Services* must be removed. No other material from these notes may be copied or communicated to any other person or persons without the express written permission of Henton.

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

The author wishes to acknowledge and thank:

The Director of the Royal Greenwich Observatory, Cambridge, for accepting the book and arranging for the correct authorities for the inclusion of copyright material.

The Controller of Her Britannic Majesty's Stationery Office for the kind permission to reproduce sections of *The Nautical Almanac* and other British Admiralty publications - in particular, the *Marine Sight Reduction Tables*. These publications are Crown Copyright.

The Defense Mapping Agency, U.S. Government, for their kind consideration in providing the information from Publication 249 (*Air Sight Reduction Tables*).

US Coast Guard for accepting the book for evaluation.

Her Majesty's Weather Office, Southampton, for their kind and prompt assistance.

The Royal Yachting Association, who were sent copies for evaluation.

Mr Roger N Hunter, Managing Director of Barnacle Marine, Nautical Publishers and Distributors for the RYA, for his valuable advice.

A Yachtmaster examiner for his personal comment "The best book on the subject I have ever read".

His wife, Daphne, for being such a fantastic First Mate!

## THE SEXTANT

### A SEXTANT'S COMPOSITION AND USE

1. **Its Use.** Let's deal with the use of a sextant first. A sextant measures angles. Accurately. To one decimal place of a minute of arc ( $0.1' = 1/10$  of  $1/60$  th of a degree). It does nothing else. Unless you use it as a weapon to throw at pirates!

2. **Its Composition.** Next, its composition. Look at the illustration below. Read the labels naming the parts and identify the equivalent parts on your sextant:

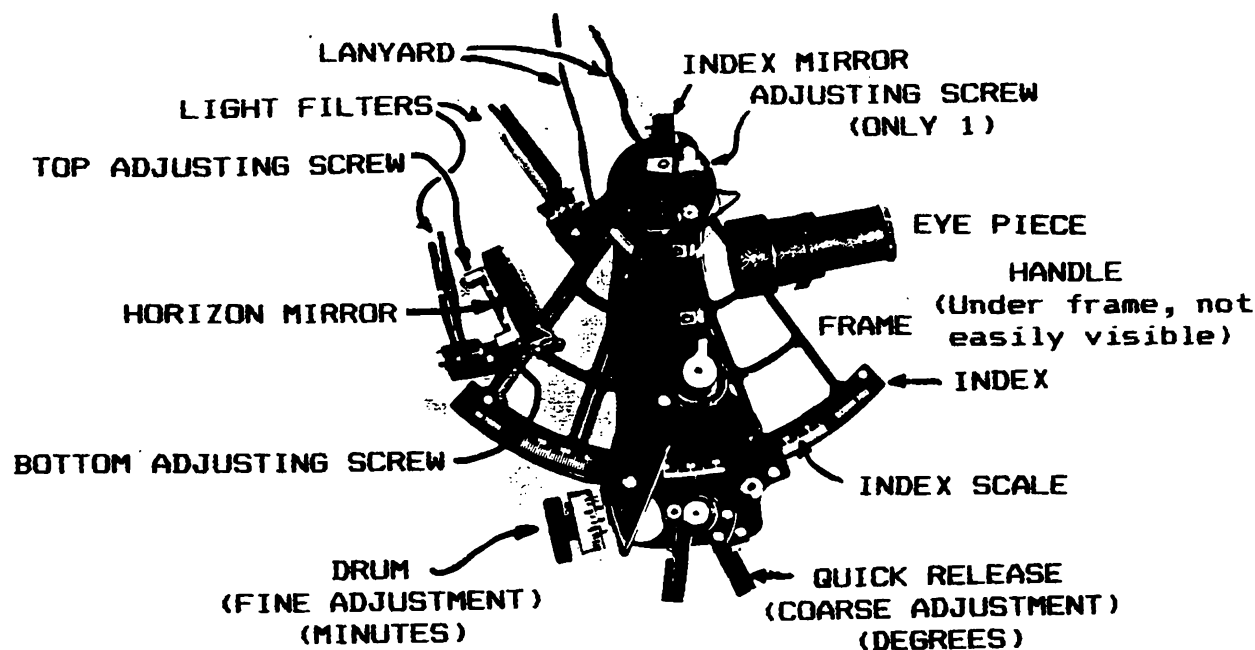


Fig. 1. THE SEXTANT AND ITS PARTS

The **FRAME** holds the **HORIZON MIRROR**, the **EYE PIECE**, the **INDEX SCALE** and **HANDLE**, while providing a pivot for the **INDEX ARM** to be able to move through the arc of the scale. The Horizon Mirror has two adjusting screws behind it. The adjustable Eye-Piece allows the user to focus on distant objects. The Index Arm has a graduation mark next to the Index Scale to enable the user to read off whole numbers of degrees, and a rotatable **DRUM** to show the fractions of a degree as 'minutes' and decimals of a minute. Near the drum is a **QUICK RELEASE** mechanism to enable coarse adjustments of the Index Arm setting. The Index Mirror is mounted on the Index Arm at the pivot end and therefore moves with the Index Arm when it is moved. This mirror has only one adjusting screw behind it.

Check the mirrors' alignments and therefore **Index Error** (I.E.) before using it to measure any angle(s). If necessary, recalibrate it to reduce or, preferably, eliminate it completely. Any Index Error (I.E.) in the sextant at the time of taking a sight will have to be allowed for when determining the correct Sextant Angle (SA).

### CALIBRATION ADJUSTMENTS

Begin by setting the **INDEX ARM** to zero degrees, zero minutes. Hold the sextant in your right hand and hold it up to the eye so that the **FRAME IS VERTICAL** and the eyepiece enables you to see a distant object which has a distinct horizontal line. The horizon is best - it is far away. If the object chosen is not far away, you may get a false reading. You will see one of the three images in Figure 2.

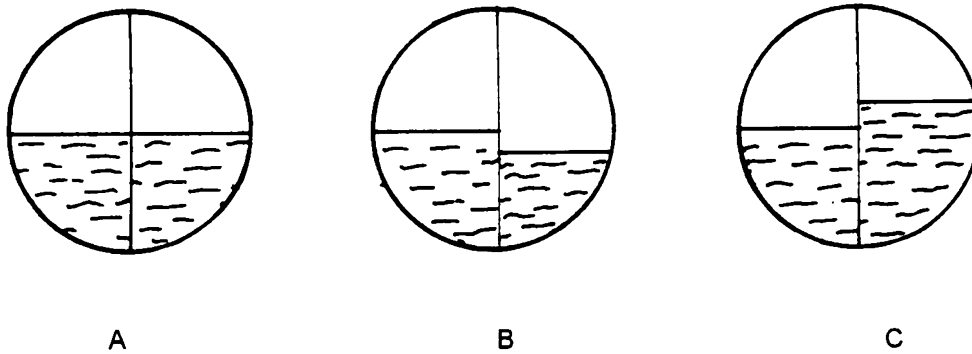


Fig. 2. A. IMAGES IN LINE - MIRRORS PROBABLY SET CORRECTLY,  
B. and C. IMAGES NOT IN LINE - MIRRORS NEED ADJUSTING.

The reason we see these images is because the left half of what we look at is viewed directly from the eyepiece but the right half involves the visible picture reaching the eye after reflecting off the mirrors:

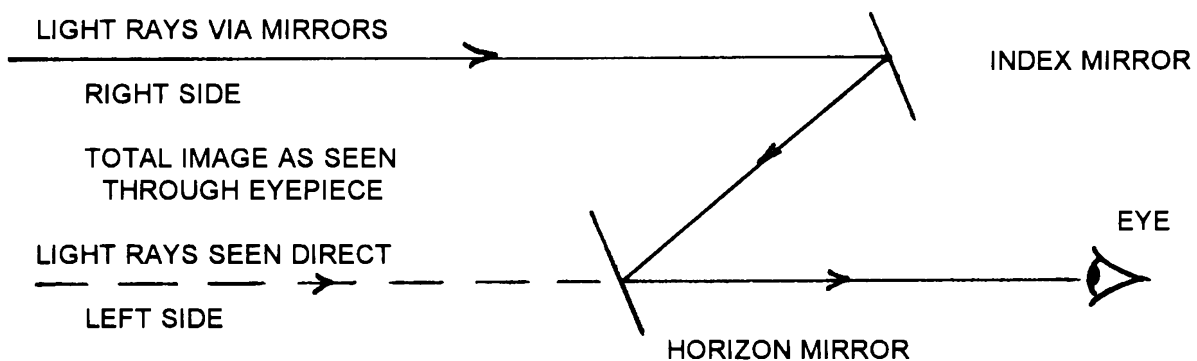


Fig. 3. HOW THE LIGHT RAYS REACH THE EYE

If the two halves, the left and the right, of the distant horizontal line image are in line, incline the sextant 45 degrees ( $45^\circ$ ) to one side and then to the other - the images must remain in line. If they do, the mirrors are correctly set. If at any of the three positions the images are not in line, the mirrors' settings need checking - one or both will need adjusting.

#### **Setting the INDEX MIRROR**

Set the index arm at about  $45^\circ$  to  $50^\circ$ . Now hold the sextant so that the frame is in an approximately horizontal plane with the index mirror between your eye and the index scale. See Figure 4. You need to be able to see over the pivot point, past the index mirror's right edge (as seen when the sextant is horizontal - the same edge which would be its bottom side if the sextant were held in the vertical plane), to the index scale near the zero degrees part of the scale. At the same time look into the right (normally bottom) part of the mirror to see the reflection of the index scale near its maximum reading. The far edges of the index scale arc should be in line. If they are not, turn the adjusting screw (there is only one) behind the index mirror. The two images of the far edges of the index scale will either get closer or further apart as you turn the screw. Turn the

screw in the direction that brings them together.

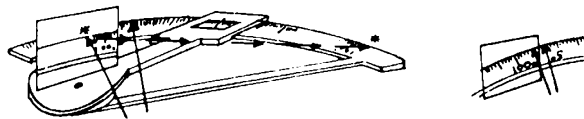


Fig. 4.

When they are in line, the index mirror will be vertical or PERPENDICULAR to the plane of the frame of the sextant - the Index mirror will be correctly aligned. If they are not in line you will experience the ERROR OF PERPENDICULARITY - a tendency to see double images, one higher than the other.



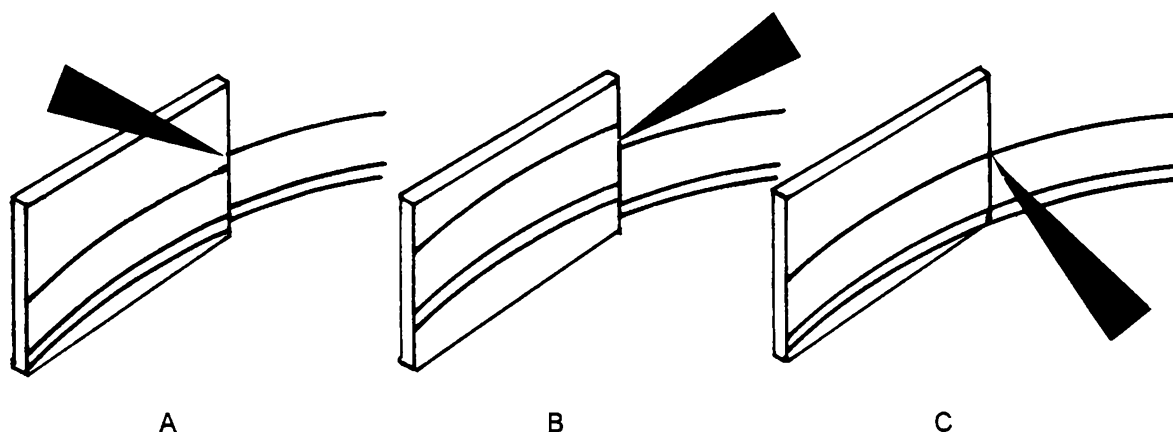


Fig. 5. ALIGNMENT OF THE INDEX MIRROR

- A. IMAGE TOO LOW
- B. IMAGE TOO HIGH
- C. IMAGE AND INDEX SCALE IN LINE

### Setting the HORIZON MIRROR

(The index mirror must be correctly adjusted before starting these adjustments).

Set the index arm to zero degrees, and the drum to zero minutes. Hold the sextant in the right hand, bring it to the eye so that it is in the vertical plane, and look at the far distant horizontal line selected earlier (preferably the horizon). Are the two images of the line 'in line'? You will see one of the three images shown in Figure 2. If the two images are in line, tilt the sextant to one side,  $45^\circ$  off the vertical. Are they still in line? Now tilt the sextant  $45^\circ$  to the opposite side of the vertical. Are they in line? If at any of the three positions the images were not in line, the horizon mirror will need adjustment. It will need to be set exactly parallel to the plane of the index mirror which was set **PERPENDICULAR** to the frame of the sextant. 'Double' images, side by side, must be removed. These double images are called **SIDE ERROR**. This mirror must now be reset, and this can be done one of two ways:

**Method 1.** Look at the double image of a distant point (a star, the moon or sun - use the sun filters) and adjust the two screws, one at a time, until the double image becomes one image overlapping the other.

**Method 2.** Checking that the drum is still on  $0.0'$ , hold the sextant so that you can see the distant horizontal line through the eyepiece. With the sextant tilted  $45^\circ$  to the right, note the difference in levels between the left and right halves of the distant horizontal line. Now by turning the higher of the two adjusting screws behind the horizon mirror, reduce the difference in the two levels **BY HALF**. If you turn the top adjusting screw the wrong way, the difference in levels will increase - turn the adjusting screw in the opposite direction.

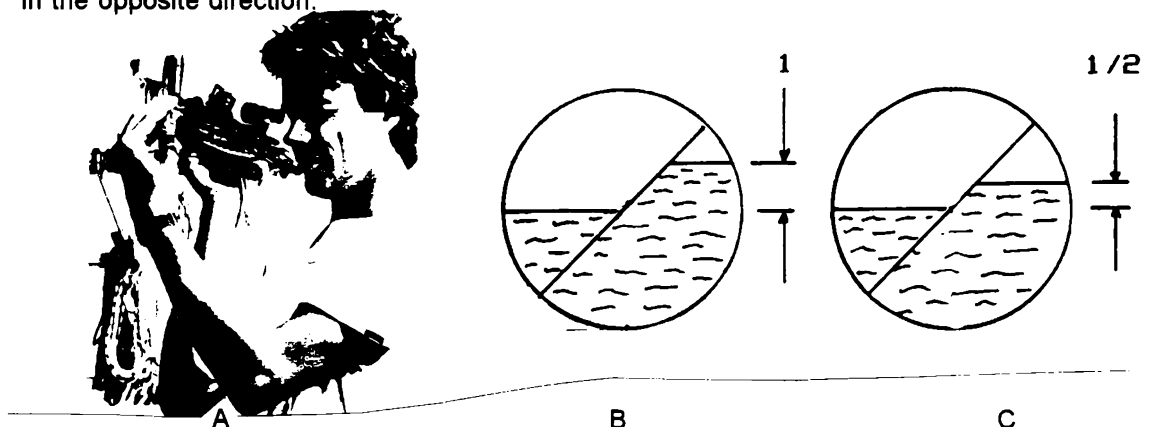


Fig. 6. THE RIGHT TILT ADJUSTMENT

- A. THE TOP ADJUSTING SCREW
- B. THE DIFFERENCE BEFORE ADJUSTING
- C. THE DIFFERENCE AFTER ADJUSTING (REDUCED BY HALF)

Now tilt the sextant 45° to the left of vertical and do the same again, this time using the bottom of the two adjusting screws behind the horizon mirror.

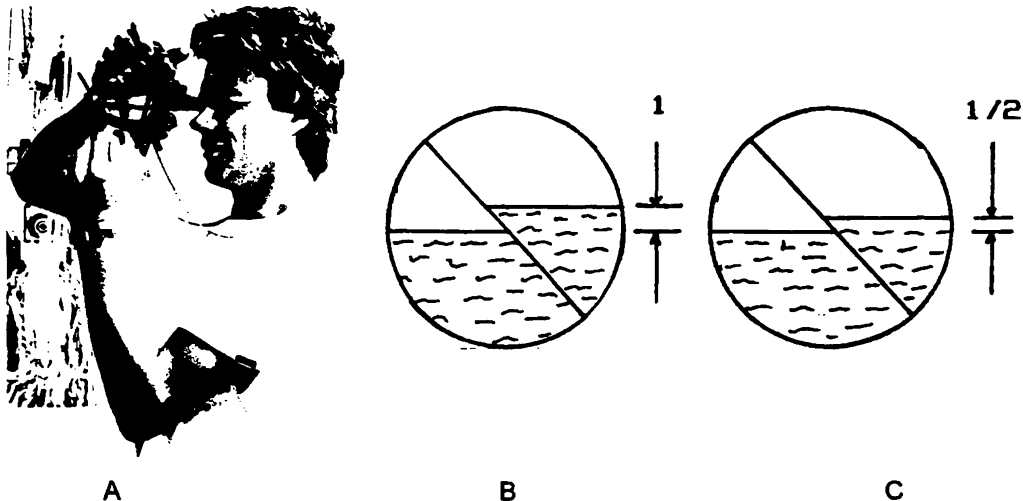


Fig. 7. THE LEFT TILT ADJUSTMENT  
 A. THE BOTTOM ADJUSTMENT SCREW  
 B. THE DIFFERENCE BEFORE ADJUSTMENT  
 C. THE DIFFERENCE AFTER ADJUSTMENT

**REMEMBER: ONLY REDUCE THE DIFFERENCE IN LEVELS BY HALF AT EACH TILT ANGLE.** Now repeat the process with the sextant inclined 45° to the right. **ONLY REDUCE THE DIFFERENCE IN LEVELS BY HALF AT EACH ANGLE OF TILT.** Now repeat again, with the sextant tilted to the left. Continue the left and right tilting adjustments until the difference in levels is eliminated.

With the sextant held in the vertical plane, check the left and right halves of the distant horizontal line. They should be in line. They should be in line whether the sextant is vertical, or tilted 45° to either side. If they are not, re-check the index mirror as it is possible you turned its adjusting screw by mistake while adjusting the horizon mirror. If this is the case, start again. If the index mirror is still correctly aligned, re-check the horizon mirror and re-adjust.

## INDEX ERROR

It is possible that you do not have time to complete the horizon mirror adjustments, or while you are still getting used to the procedure, you get close to 'in line' but not exactly 'in line'. There will be a small amount of error remaining at the time you wish to use the sextant to measure an angle (take a sight?). You therefore need to know what this error is. It is called the 'Index Error' (I.E.).

Hold the sextant to the eye so that it is vertical and you can see the distant horizontal line. While **KEEPING THE SEXTANT VERTICAL**, adjust the drum until the left and right images of the distant horizontal line come in line while **KEEPING THE SEXTANT VERTICAL**.

Note the reading on the drum. It will either be a few minutes (and decimals?) of an angle greater than zero (zero degrees, zero minutes) i.e. a positive angle ('ON' the scale), or less than zero, i.e. a negative angle ('OFF' the scale).

Note that the 'scale' we refer to is from zero degrees towards the left, towards the 100°, as one looks at a sextant's index scale.

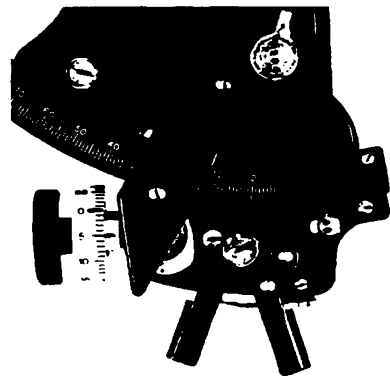


Fig. 8. INDEX ERROR 'ON' THE SCALE.

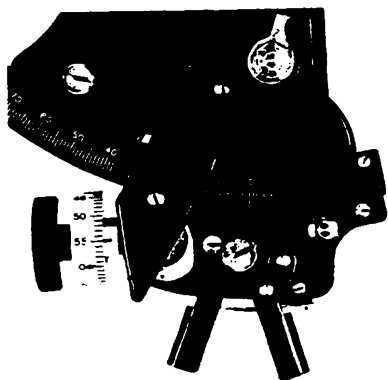


Fig. 9. INDEX ERROR 'OFF' THE SCALE.

If the index error was 3.5' OFF the scale, we must add it to any angle measured. We say 'Index Error "OFF" the scale, add'.

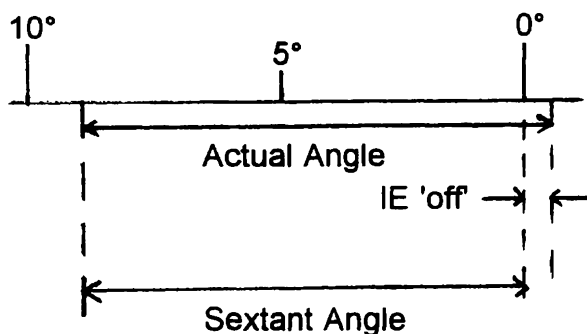


Fig. 10. INDEX ERROR 'OFF' THE SCALE, ADD.

The index error found must now be added or subtracted to any angle measured with the sextant. If the error was 3.5' ON the scale, this would represent the zero position of the sextant at the time. So any angle measured will include this error. The true angle required must therefore have this error subtracted; we say 'Index Error "on" the scale, subtract'.

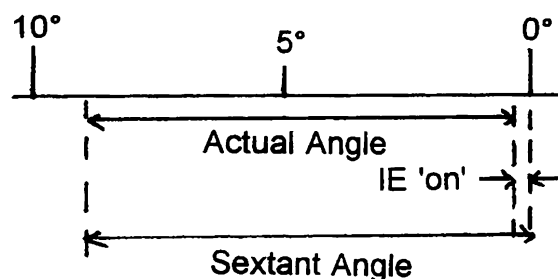


Fig. 11. INDEX ERROR 'ON' THE SCALE, SUBTRACT

Index error should be checked just before a sextant is used - it can be dangerous to assume that it will be the same as the last time the sextant was used. Anything can happen to alter it and plastic sextants will have index errors which change with temperature changes - plastic sextants' errors should be checked before and after use and the average taken as the Index Error for the angle measured.

### COLLIMATION ERROR

Collimation error is the error which results when the axis of the telescope or eyepiece is not correctly aligned with the plane of the sextant. A good sextant will not have any collimation error, and the average sextant used in the present day does not have any means of adjusting for it.

### OTHER ERRORS

There can be other errors caused by the pivot point on the index arm not being correctly aligned with the index scale, incorrect graduation of the index scale, or imperfect lenses used in the telescope eyepiece. They can not be adjusted and the manufacturer normally supplies a table of values to be used to compensate for these errors. The values one would see in a good sextant's table would be very small and for the yachtsman or woman who is not needing the accuracy of a few metres, they can be ignored.

### DIP / HEIGHT OF EYE

The height of the sextant user's eye above sea level effects the resulting angle when measuring the angular height of a celestial body, be it the sun, moon, a star or a planet. The angular height is called the ALTITUDE of the body, and it will be changing constantly because of the rotation of the earth on its axis. The altitude or angle to be measured uses the horizon as the base of the angle. An horizon

at sea level is not parallel to an horizon as seen by a person whose eye is several metres above sea level. So at the same moment in time, the angle at sea level is smaller than the angle measured some metres above sea level - due only to the two using different reference horizons. The higher one's eye is above sea level, the larger the sextant angle will be. We need to know the angle between a line to/from the celestial body and the horizon where we are at sea level, so we need to subtract from the sextant reading taken above sea level, an amount which will correct for the difference between the 'at eye level' and the 'at sea level' angles.

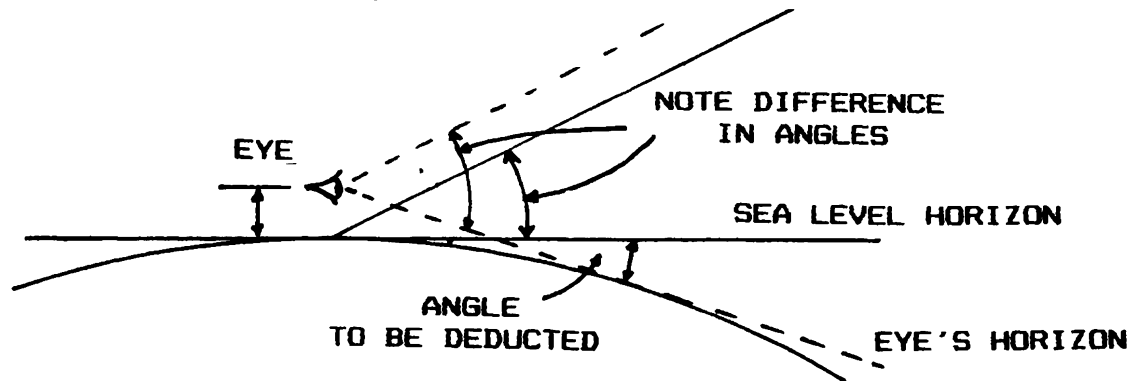


Fig. 12. EFFECT OF HEIGHT OF EYE ON ANGLE MEASURED

Fortunately, the amounts to subtract, depending on the height of eye, are constant all over the world because of its (almost) uniform round shape. The Almanac has a table, conveniently worked out for us so we do not have to get involved in the mathematics. It is called the DIP table and it appears in the Almanac at the front as part of the page titled ALTITUDE CORRECTION TABLES 10°-90° -SUN, STARS, PLANETS. It also appears on a loose-leaf card reproduction of that page for ease of use. This card can be used as a book mark.

The table appears on page 7 as Table 1.

The average height of a sextant user's eye on a cruising yacht is 3 m. So if we look at the DIP table (Table 1, next page), we can use the left half of the DIP figures where we will see:

m		ft (feet)
...		...
2.8		9.2
	- 3.0 ←	
→ 3.0		9.8
	- 3.1	
3.2		10.5
...		...

Under the centre column, opposite and slightly above '3.0' in the left ('m' for metres) column we see '-3.0'. This is the amount to be subtracted from the sextant angle to get the angle applicable at sea level.

We could also have looked under the right-hand half of the DIP table where 3.0 m is directly next to '-3.0'. What would the correction be if the height of eye (of the sextant user) was only six feet? Look just over half way down on the extreme right hand column - the answer is '-2.4'

So the sextant angle or angular height (SEXTANT ALTITUDE) - called SA or Hs in calculations - obtained from the sextant needs to be corrected for Index Error and DIP. If the Index Error was 3.5' OFF the scale when the sextant angle was seen to be 47° 38.2' and height of eye was 3 metres, the corrections to be made are:

SA (or Hs)	47°38.2'	
Index Error(+or-)	+ 3.5' (+, "OFF")	
DIP (always -)	- 3.0'	
Answer	47°38.7'	(Continued on page 8.)

ALTITUDE CORRECTION TABLES 10°-90°—SUN, STARS, PLANETS

OCT.—MAR. SUN			APR.—SEPT.			STARS AND PLANETS			DIP					
App. Alt.	Lower Limb	Upper Limb	App. Alt.	Lower Limb	Upper Limb	App. Alt.	Corr <sup>n</sup>	App. Alt.	Additional Corr <sup>n</sup>	Ht. of Eye	Corr <sup>n</sup>	Ht. of Eye	Ht. of Eye	Corr <sup>n</sup>
9 34	+10.8	-21.5	9 39	+10.6	-21.2	9 56	-5.3	19 ..		m		ft.	m	
9 45	+10.9	-21.4	9 51	+10.7	-21.1	10 08	-5.2	VENUS		2.4	-2.8	8.0	1.0	-1.8
9 56	+11.0	-21.3	10 03	+10.8	-21.0	10 20	-5.1	Jan. 1-July 18		2.6	-2.9	8.6	1.5	-2.2
10 08	+11.1	-21.2	10 15	+10.9	-20.9	10 33	-5.0	0		2.8	-3.0	9.2	2.0	-2.5
10 21	+11.2	-21.1	10 27	+11.0	-20.8	10 46	-4.9	60 +0.1		3.0	-3.1	9.8	2.5	-2.8
10 34	+11.3	-21.0	10 40	+11.1	-20.7	11 00	-4.8	0		3.2	-3.2	10.5	3.0	-3.0
10 47	+11.4	-20.9	10 54	+11.2	-20.6	11 14	-4.7	60 +0.1		3.4	-3.3	11.2		See table
11 01	+11.5	-20.8	11 08	+11.3	-20.5	11 29	-4.6	July 19-Sept. 6		3.6	-3.3	11.9		←
11 15	+11.6	-20.7	11 23	+11.4	-20.4	11 45	-4.5	0		3.8	-3.4	12.6		m
11 30	+11.7	-20.6	11 38	+11.5	-20.3	12 01	-4.4	41 +0.2		4.0	-3.5	13.3	20	-7.9
11 46	+11.8	-20.5	11 54	+11.6	-20.2	12 18	-4.3	76 +0.1		4.3	-3.6	14.1	22	-8.3
12 02	+11.9	-20.4	12 10	+11.7	-20.1	12 35	-4.2	Sept. 7-Sept. 28		4.5	-3.7	14.9	24	-8.6
12 19	+12.0	-20.3	12 28	+11.8	-20.0	12 54	-4.1	Dec. 10-Dec. 31		4.7	-3.8	15.7	26	-9.0
12 37	+12.1	-20.2	13 05	+11.9	-19.9	13 13	-4.0	0		5.0	-3.9	16.5	28	-9.3
12 55	+12.2	-20.1	13 24	+12.1	-19.7	13 33	-3.9	34 +0.3		5.2	-4.0	17.4		
13 14	+12.3	-20.0	13 45	+12.2	-19.6	13 54	-3.8	60 +0.2		5.5	-4.1	18.3	30	-9.6
13 35	+12.4	-19.9	14 07	+12.3	-19.5	14 16	-3.7	80 +0.1		5.8	-4.2	19.1	32	-10.0
13 56	+12.5	-19.8	14 30	+12.4	-19.4	14 40	-3.6	Sept. 29-Oct. 14		6.1	-4.3	20.1	34	-10.3
14 18	+12.6	-19.7	14 54	+12.5	-19.3	15 04	-3.5	Nov. 25-Dec. 9		6.3	-4.4	21.0	36	-10.6
14 42	+12.7	-19.6	15 19	+12.6	-19.2	15 30	-3.4	0		6.6	-4.5	22.0	38	-10.8
15 06	+12.8	-19.5	15 46	+12.7	-19.1	15 57	-3.3	29 +0.4		6.9	-4.6	22.9		
15 32	+12.9	-19.4	16 14	+12.8	-19.0	16 26	-3.2	51 +0.3		7.2	-4.7	23.9	40	-11.1
15 59	+13.0	-19.3	16 44	+12.9	-18.9	16 56	-3.1	68 +0.2		7.5	-4.8	24.9	42	-11.4
16 28	+13.1	-19.2	17 15	+13.0	-18.8	17 28	-3.0	83 +0.1		7.9	-4.9	26.0	44	-11.7
16 59	+13.2	-19.1	17 48	+13.1	-18.7	18 02	-2.9	Oct. 15-Nov. 24		8.2	-5.0	27.1	46	-11.9
17 32	+13.3	-19.0	18 24	+13.2	-18.6	18 38	-2.8	0		8.5	-5.1	28.1	48	-12.2
18 06	+13.4	-18.9	19 01	+13.3	-18.5	19 17	-2.7	26 +0.5		8.8	-5.2	29.2		ft.
18 42	+13.5	-18.8	19 42	+13.4	-18.4	19 58	-2.6	46 +0.4		9.2	-5.3	30.4	2	-1.4
19 21	+13.6	-18.7	20 25	+13.5	-18.3	20 42	-2.5	60 +0.3		9.5	-5.4	31.5	4	-1.9
20 03	+13.7	-18.6	21 11	+13.6	-18.2	21 28	-2.4	73 +0.2		9.9	-5.5	32.7	6	-2.4
20 48	+13.8	-18.5	22 00	+13.7	-18.1	22 19	-2.3	84 +0.1		10.3	-5.6	33.9	8	-2.7
21 35	+13.9	-18.4	22 54	+13.8	-18.0	23 13	-2.2	MARS		10.6	-5.7	35.1	10	-3.1
22 26	+14.0	-18.3	23 51	+13.9	-17.9	24 11	-2.1	Jan. 1-Dec. 14		11.0	-5.8	36.3		See table
23 22	+14.1	-18.2	24 53	+14.0	-17.8	25 14	-2.0	0		11.4	-5.9	37.6		←
24 21	+14.2	-18.1	25 36	+14.1	-17.7	26 22	-1.9	60 +0.1		11.8	-6.0	38.9		ft.
25 26	+14.3	-18.0	26 33	+14.2	-17.6	27 36	-1.8	Dec. 15-Dec. 31		12.2	-6.1	40.1	70	-8.1
26 36	+14.4	-17.9	27 13	+14.3	-17.5	28 56	-1.7	0		12.6	-6.2	41.5	75	-8.4
27 52	+14.5	-17.8	28 33	+14.4	-17.4	30 24	-1.6	60 +0.1		13.0	-6.3	42.8	80	-8.7
29 15	+14.6	-17.7	29 50	+14.5	-17.3	32 00	-1.5	0		13.4	-6.4	44.2	85	-8.9
30 46	+14.7	-17.6	31 35	+14.6	-17.2	33 45	-1.4	41 +0.2		13.8	-6.5	45.5	90	-9.2
32 26	+14.8	-17.5	33 20	+14.7	-17.1	35 40	-1.3	76 +0.1		14.2	-6.6	46.9	95	-9.5
34 17	+14.9	-17.4	35 17	+14.8	-17.0	37 48	-1.2	0		14.7	-6.7	48.4		
36 20	+15.0	-17.3	37 26	+14.9	-16.9	40 08	-1.1	Dec. 15-Dec. 31		15.1	-6.8	49.8	100	-9.7
38 36	+15.1	-17.2	39 50	+15.0	-16.8	42 44	-1.0	0		15.5	-6.9	51.3	105	-9.9
41 08	+15.2	-17.1	42 31	+15.1	-16.7	45 36	-0.9	60 +0.1		16.0	-7.0	52.8	110	-10.2
43 59	+15.3	-17.0	45 31	+15.2	-16.6	48 47	-0.8	Dec. 15-Dec. 31		16.5	-7.1	54.3	115	-10.4
47 10	+15.4	-16.9	48 55	+15.3	-16.5	52 18	-0.7	0		16.9	-7.2	55.8	120	-10.6
50 46	+15.5	-16.8	52 44	+15.4	-16.4	56 11	-0.6	41 +0.2		17.4	-7.3	57.4	125	-10.8
54 49	+15.6	-16.7	57 02	+15.5	-16.3	60 28	-0.5	76 +0.1		17.9	-7.4	58.9		
59 23	+15.7	-16.6	61 51	+15.6	-16.2	65 08	-0.4	0		18.4	-7.5	60.5		
64 30	+15.8	-16.5	67 17	+15.7	-16.1	70 11	-0.3	41 +0.2		18.8	-7.6	62.1	130	-11.1
70 12	+15.9	-16.4	73 16	+15.8	-16.0	75 34	-0.2	76 +0.1		19.3	-7.7	63.8	135	-11.3
76 26	+16.0	-16.3	79 43	+15.9	-15.9	81 13	-0.1	0		19.8	-7.8	65.4	140	-11.5
83 05	+16.1	-16.2	86 32	+16.0	-16.0	87 03	0.0	41 +0.2		20.4	-7.9	67.1	145	-11.7
90 00			90 00			90 00	0.0	76 +0.1		20.9	-8.0	68.8	150	-11.9
										21.4	-8.1	70.5	155	-12.1

App. Alt. = Apparent altitude = Sextant altitude corrected for index error and dip.

Table 1. THE DIP TABLE (RIGHT-HAND COLUMNS)

The 'Answer' is what is called the Apparent Altitude or AA - it is still not the angle formed at your position, between the horizon and a line to/from the celestial body. Although it APPEARS to be the required angle, there are still two other factors to be taken into account - so until they have been allowed for, this angle is the APPARENT ANGLE or APPARENT ALTITUDE.

If the sextant angle to a star was seen on the sextant to be 51° 21.9' when the Index Error was 4.6' 'ON' the scale and the height of eye was 5 metres, what would the AA be?

SA (or Hs)	51°21.9'	
IE (for Index Error)	- 4.6'	(-, 'ON')
DIP (-)	- 3.9'	
AA	= 51°13.4'	

NOTE: Index Error can be + or -, depending on whether the error is on or off the scale, but DIP is always negative.

This AA is still not the real or TRUE ANGLE or TRUE ALTITUDE (TA) we require. Of the other two factors to be taken into account, the first is the result of the refraction of light rays passing through the atmosphere giving the impression that the star is where you see it while it is in fact closer to the horizon.

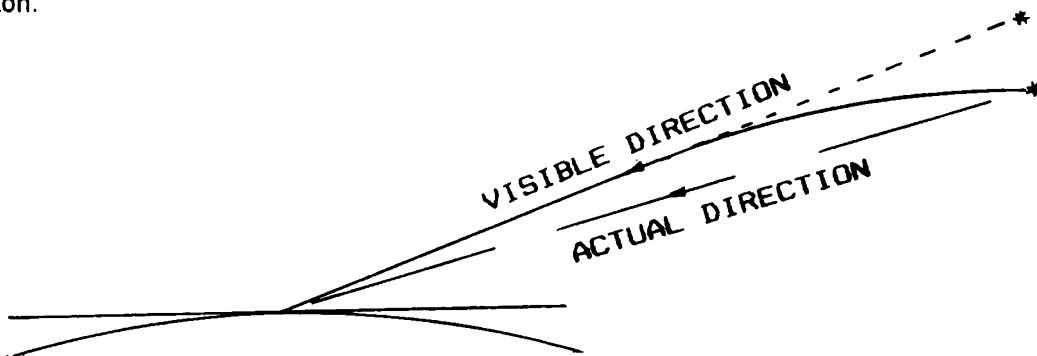


Fig. 13. HOW REFRACTION AFFECTS THE TRUE ALTITUDE (TA)

The other is called 'semi-diameter'. Semi-diameter (SD) is the allowance made for the fact that when taking a sextant sight (angle) of the sun or moon which are large when compared to a star or planet, we sight up the bottom arc of the sun or moon (known as a Lower Limb - LL -sight) or the top arc (an Upper Limb - UL -sight) with the horizon. Viewed through a sextant it looks like this:

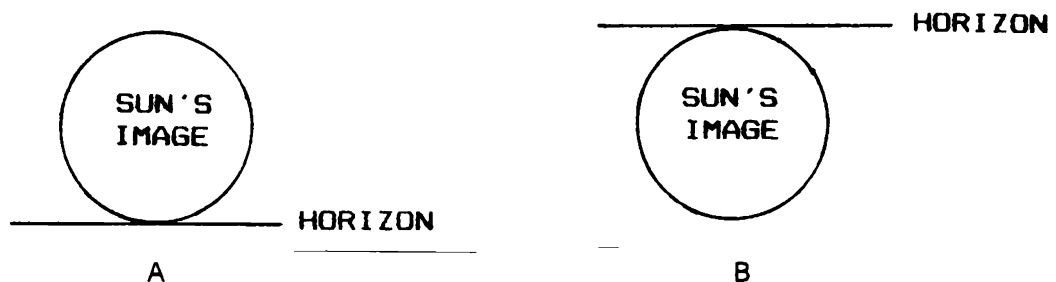


Fig. 14. A. LOWER LIMB SIGHT. B. UPPER LIMB SIGHT.

....but the Almanac tables are based on data relevant to the centre of celestial bodies. The corrections for refraction and SD are combined in the Almanac tables, so there is only one number to add to or subtract from the AA to get TA - the TRUE ALTITUDE or True Angular HEIGHT actually applicable at the time of the sight or OBSERVATION of the celestial body, therefore TA is also sometimes called the 'Ho' (of the body).

Look back at the table on page 7, Table 1, left third for the SUN - and we see it is in two 6-months sections, October to March (inclusive) and April to September. So if it was July when we took our sight we would use the right-hand half of the SUN section. If in July the AA was 51°13.4', we look down the right half under the columns headed 'App Alt', 'Lower Limb', and 'Upper Limb' and see....

App Alt	Lower Limb	Upper Limb
...		
48°55'		
	+15.2'	-16.6'
52°44'		
...		

Since our AA (51°13.4') is between 48°55' and 52°44', if our sextant sight was a LL (Lower limb) sight, the TA or Ho would be

AA	51°13.4'
Correction	+ <u>15.2'</u>
TA or Ho	51°28.6'

The 'correction' is often referred to as the 'main correction'. Remember it makes allowance for refraction and semi-diameter.

It is the TA or Ho that we need when we take a sight.

The centre section of the table 'Altitude Correction Tables' (page 7) is for use with stars and planets - both are small dots on the horizon so there is no Upper or Lower Limb involved, and there is no 'semi-diameter' - the correction is for refraction only. For planets we use the correction applied to the stars AND, if applicable, the correction for the applicable planet for any/the months/dates shown. The moon, being closer, has its own correction tables.

Every sight taken in astro-navigation starts with the steps we have just covered - converting the sextant angle, SA or Hs, via the AA to get the TA or Ho.

Before we end the subject of the sextant we need to cover 'tips' for its practical use and care at sea. So:

1. A sextant is an expensive, delicate and accurate measuring instrument - treat it with care and respect, keeping it in its box when it is not needed. Store the box in as dry a place as possible and where it cannot get knocked about, or have heavy things dropped or placed on top of it.
2. Keep the sextant in the box until you are in the cockpit. You do not want to stumble or fall with it in your hands while on your way out of the saloon.
3. As soon as you remove it from the box, place the lanyard around your neck (if your sextant does not have a lanyard, fit one immediately - a strong, thin, nylon string cord one metre in length tied as a loop around the handle such that the loop length is just less than half a metre). If you then stumble and have to grab on to the yacht as it lurches, the sextant will not fall and it is very unlikely that it will get damaged.
4. When handling the sextant, do not apply any pressure or force(s) to any part of it. To reduce the risk of applying unintentional force, keep it held in the right hand, using the handle at all times except when necessary to hold it otherwise, for example, when calibrating/adjusting for index error, etc.
5. When using a plastic sextant, take your left hand off the drum after rotating it for fine adjustment, take your left hand off the drum so that no twisting force is applied to the frame giving incorrect readings.
6. Check index error often but only adjust to reduce this error when it is greater than 4.0'.
7. Avoid taking sights of celestial bodies which are less than 10° above the horizon - the refraction is too great.
8. Before taking a sight of the sun, ensure all the sunlight filters are in position to protect your eye. Once you have the sun sighted, if it or the horizon is too dark, remove one filter at a time to get the best image. Some filters are of different colours so you can adjust to get the most suitable for your eye.
9. When taking a sight of a celestial body, ensure the sextant frame is in a vertical plane. If it is not, a false reading will result. To check the frame is vertical, 'rock' the sextant from side to side and you will see the celestial body appear to move in an arc like a hanging pendulum. When it is at the bottom of the swing, the sextant is vertical. See Figure 15 on page 10.

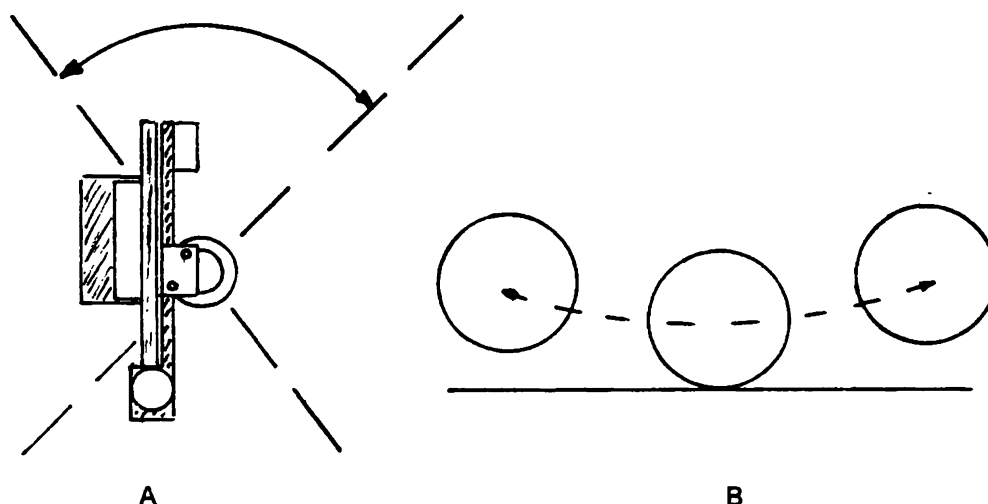


Fig. 15. A. ROCKING THE SEXTANT B. THE PENDULUM IMAGE

10. The exact Universal Time (UT), or Universal Time Co-ordinated (UTC), i.e. the new name for Greenwich Mean Time, GMT, must be used or a time which one can convert to UT/GMT. For sights taken in an easterly or westerly direction, every 4-second error in timing represents an error of one nautical mile in the resulting line of position obtained.

11. In rough weather or with a big swell running, try to take sights from the top of swells as a more accurate view of the horizon is possible - sometimes it can not be seen at all!

12. Take several sights in fairly quick succession noting the exact time of each sight. You will later be able to average the readings, discarding any that do not fit the pattern of the majority. The average obtained will lead to the most accurate final result. (How to average these readings will be discussed in detail when we examine sun sights).

13. When taking a sight, get someone to take the time for you if possible. When you have the sextant angle right, call out 'mark' (or anything to signify the exact moment) - your assistant can then note the time accurately. If you are on your own, at the exact moment the sextant angle is right, start counting at the rate of one per second - it may take practice. As soon as you can, look at your clock or watch and when the second hand gets to a convenient multiple of 5 seconds, note that time and subtract the number of seconds you counted to.

14. Do not take it for granted that the person noting the time for you will always get it right - it is easy and it often happens that the time is wrongly recorded, so check. It is just as easy and frequent for the sextant-user to read the angle from the sextant wrongly! Check your own reading again!

15. Star and planet sights are best taken during twilight. Moon sights, other than those taken during the day when the moon is visible, are also best taken at twilight. If they are taken during the hours of darkness with a full moon, the horizon is difficult to distinguish through the eyepiece and false readings are often obtained.

16. The moon and the planets Venus and Jupiter are sometimes visible during the day (I am told, although I have never seen the planets by day!). Sights taken on the sun and one or more of these bodies within a few minutes of each other enable one to get a position fix within minutes.

17. At evening twilight the eastern horizon disappears first and in the morning the stars and planets over the eastern horizon will disappear first - this affects the choice of sequence of taking sights. At sunset and sunrise, take the eastern star/planet sights first.

18. As soon as you have finished using the sextant, clean it and put it back in its box and the box back in its proper stowage place. To clean a sextant, wipe it over with a soft dry or just off-dry cloth. If the cloth is damp, it should be because of fresh water, not sea water. Remove any sea spray that may have splashed on to the sextant. A wipe with a light oil on a cloth will help to keep it in good condition. Do not do this for plastic sextants.

19. Periodically check that no screws, bolts or nuts are coming loose. If any are, tighten them so that they are just tight - be careful not to over-tighten them.

20. Keep the sextant box clean and dry!

**DO NOT LET UNSUPERVISED CHILDREN OR NOVICES PLAY OR FIDDLE WITH A SEXTANT.**



## THE NOON OR MERIDIAN PASSAGE SIGHT

### EXPLANATION OF THE LOGIC

#### NOON

Noon, where the observer is, is when the sun is directly north or south of the observer. At that moment the sun and the observer are on the same meridian. Also at that moment, as the sun passes over the observer's meridian (the Meridian Passage or MP of the sun), the vertical angle the sun makes at the observer, between the horizon and a line from the observer to the sun, is at its maximum\* on that day.

#### LONGITUDE

We know that the earth rotates  $360^\circ$  on its axis once every 24 hours. If we know the exact time meridian passage occurs over the Greenwich Meridian ( $0^\circ$  Longitude), and if we can establish the exact time meridian passage occurs where the observer is, the time difference between the two meridian passages enables us to determine longitude. For example, if the observer's (the local) meridian passage, called the LMP, is 3 hours before Greenwich Meridian Passage, called GMP, the observer's longitude will be  $3/24$  ths of  $360^\circ$ . This is  $45^\circ$  and since the earth rotates from west to east, and as LMP occurs BEFORE GMP, the observer is east of Greenwich. So the longitude is  $45^\circ 00.0'$  East.

#### LATITUDE

To understand the latitude calculation, one must know the meanings of a few terms used.

1. **True Altitude (TA or Ho)** - this was covered in Chapter 1. It is the sextant angle after corrections. It is also called the angular height of the sun at the moment of the observation - the height at the time of observation using the sextant, or Ho.
2. **Zenith Distance (ZD)** - this is the difference between TA/Ho and  $90^\circ$ .

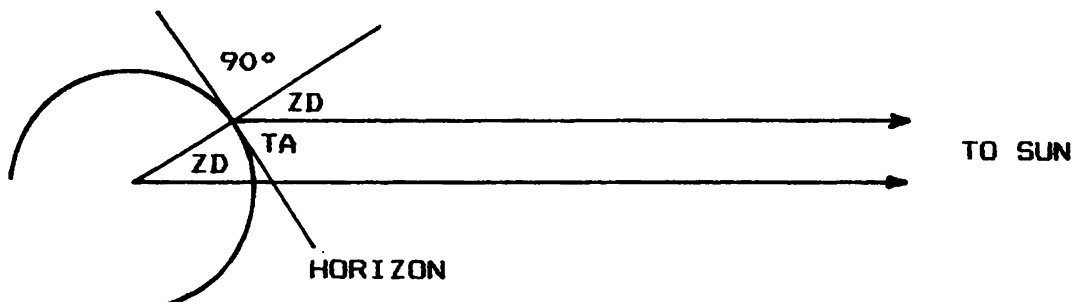


Fig. 16. TRUE ALTITUDE AND ZENITH DISTANCE

3. **Declination of the sun (Dec)** - this is the angle between the plane of the equator and a line from the centre of the earth to the centre of the sun.

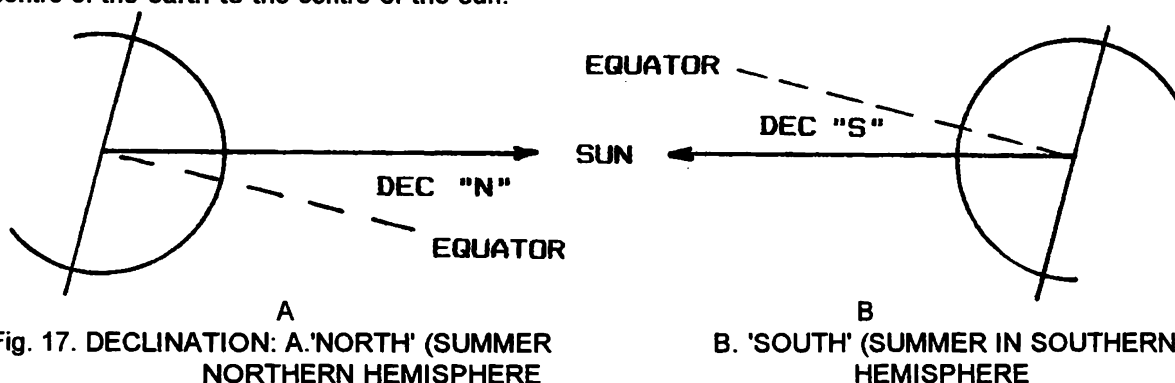


Fig. 17. DECLINATION: A. 'NORTH' (SUMMER NORTHERN HEMISPHERE

B. 'SOUTH' (SUMMER IN SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE

At LMP we measure the SA/Hs (sextant angle) and convert it to the equivalent TA/Ho (true altitude). We subtract the TA/Ho from  $90^\circ$  to get the ZD (zenith distance). Knowing the EXACT time of the sight at LMP we look in the Almanac on the page for the day and find the Dec (Declination) for the hour, and the additional part, the INCREMENT, for the minutes, we get from the 'yellow pages' to arrive at the total Dec. Now it is simple geometry as there are six possible permutations:

\*Not exactly true, but see the bottom of page 25 and page 26.

i. Dec 'North'; DR latitude 'North' and north of Dec.

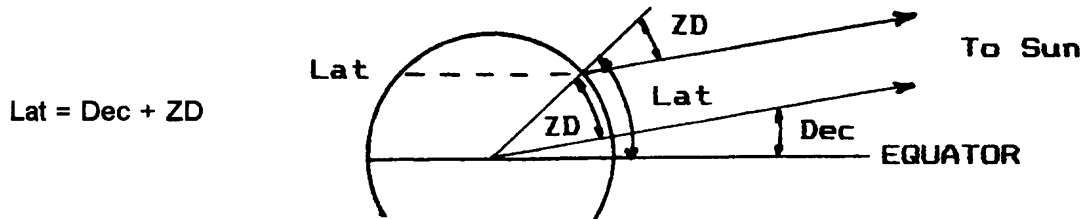


Fig. 18.

ii. Dec 'North', DR latitude 'North' but south of Dec.

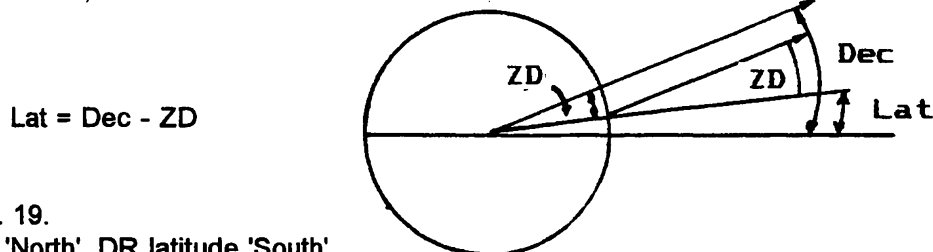


Fig. 19.

iii. Dec 'North', DR latitude 'South'.

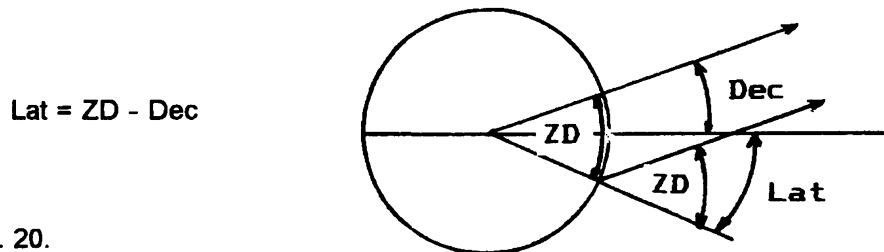


Fig. 20.

iv. Dec 'South', DR latitude 'North'.

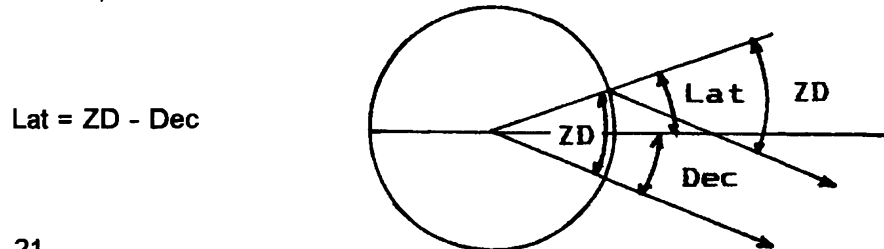


Fig. 21.

v. Dec 'South', DR latitude 'South' but north of Dec.

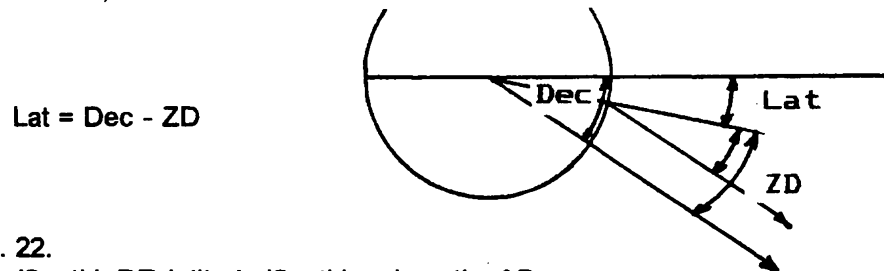


Fig. 22.

vi. Dec 'South', DR latitude 'South' and south of Dec.

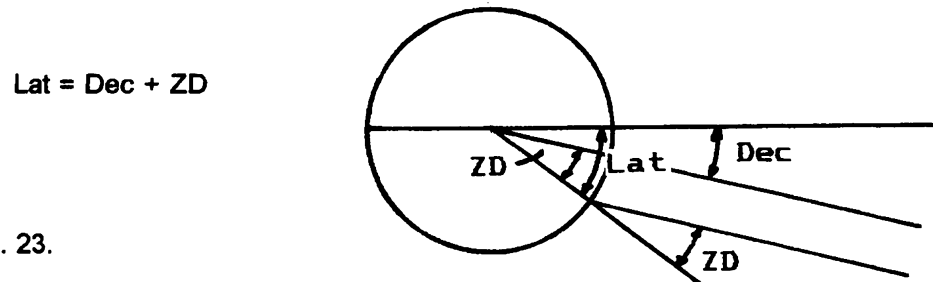


Fig. 23.

As long as we can determine the exact time and sextant angle applicable at LMP, with the aid of an Almanac we can find our latitude and longitude daily as at the time of LMP, or MP. Now let's examine the detail of how to do it.

**WARNING: The Longitude obtained by this method can be unreliable - the reason will be explained later.** (See the bottom of page 25 and page 26.)

## **LONGITUDE**

As the sun rises during the morning and sets in the afternoon (it rises up until noon then sets after noon), it follows a smooth arc or curved path through the sky. At or in the vicinity of the top of this arc, the angle as we would measure it with a sextant, changes very slowly as noon approaches, then appears to remain constant for a minute or so around noon, then very slowly it begins to decrease. So the exact second of time applicable to LMP is not discernible. However, during the middle of the morning and afternoon the sun is seen to be rising or setting rapidly - an exact sextant angle can be related to an exact second in time.

We therefore take a sextant sight of the sun during the morning, noting the exact angle and time. Near noon we watch the sun's sextant angle very closely to get the apparent maximum angle although the exact time to the second is not discernible. As the sun angle decreases after noon, we watch, having re-set the sextant to the angle applicable at the time of the first sight taken in the morning. When the sun gets down to that angle we note the exact time. Since the path taken by the sun is the arc of a circle, and the sextant angles in the morning and in the afternoon were the same, the mid-way time between these two sights will be the exact time of LMP.

Let's look at it in diagrammatic form:

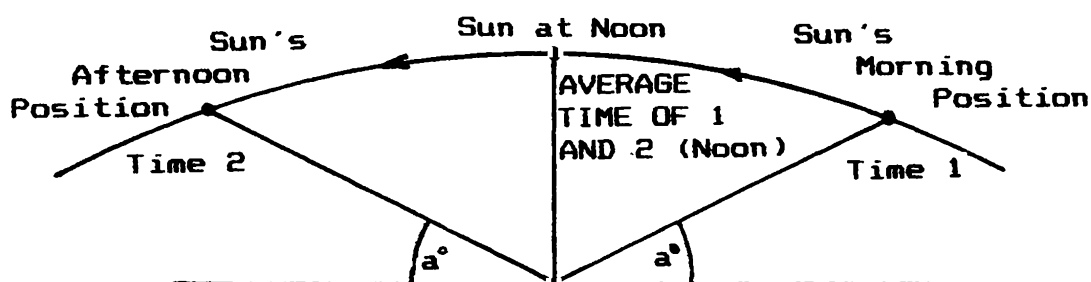


Fig. 24. SIGHTS TAKEN FOR LONGITUDE AT NOON / MP.

We could take two separate readings in the morning at an interval of, say, an hour, and then we would have two sextant angles to use to take times for in the afternoon. The two pairs, each pair being of the same angle but at different times, can be used independently to determine the mid-time - the time of noon, which is also the average of the two times using the same angles. In chronological sequence they would be Sight 1 (angle 1), Sight 2 (angle 2), Sight 3 at MP (angle 3), Sight 4 (angle 2) and Sight 5 (angle 1). Note that sights 1 and 5, and sights 2 and 4 have the same sextant angles. Let's look at it diagrammatically:

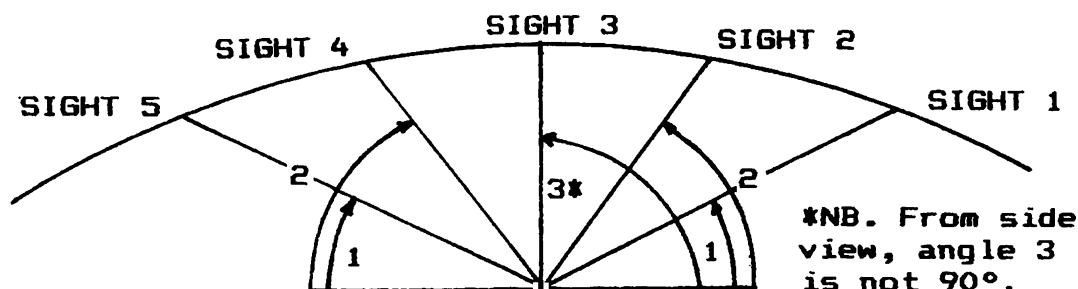


Fig. 25. PAIRED SIGHTS TAKEN FOR LONGITUDE AT NOON

Why, you may ask, do we need to take two sets of sights before and after noon? **REMEMBER THE WARNING EARLIER?** We take two (or more!) sets of sights each side of noon because we can then take the average time of MP obtained from each matching set of times and same sextant angle

readings. Each MP will not be the same. This is because of the difficulty in seeing the horizon, and seeing it clearly, just as the afternoon sun's angle gets to the preset angle of the sextant - it is difficult to assess the correct moment and errors in timing can easily occur. For every 4 seconds of time error in resulting MP, the longitude error increases by one nautical mile. See also the bottom of page 25.

So the clock, watch, chronometer or whatever we use to measure time with, needs to be accurate, or its error needs to be known exactly and this error taken into account when determining the time of a sight. Some navigators like to keep their watches set to local time, then adjust for the difference with UT (UTC/GMT) as all detail in the Almanac is based on Universal Time. I recommend that the navigator's timing device (his watch?) is kept set to UTC (GMT). Most modern wrist watches are quite accurate enough as long as the user knows the error and its rate of change (does it gain or lose time and if so, by how much per day/week). These watches often have the advantage that they can, at the push of a button, show a second time so they can be set for UT and local time.

**EXAMPLE 1.** Let us now do an example of determining MP. We will assume five sights were taken during the day (28 February 199x), two before noon, one at MP when it was not possible to note the exact time of MP, and two after MP using the same angles in our sextant as were used in the morning sights. Let's also assume that our timepiece, set to UTC, was known to be 9 seconds fast. If our clock is fast, it is ahead of the true time, so we need to deduct the 'fast' error from the time seen on the watch to get the correct time. Our sight detail is as follows:

Sight Number	Sextant Angle	Watch/clock time	Corrected time
1	46° 26.7'	07h31m48s	07h31m39s
2	52° 03.2'	08h46m51s	08h46m42s
3, LMP i.e. max SA	53° 12.8'	Not discernable-LMP	LMP ? (To be found)
4	Same as #2	10h13m25s	10h13m16s
5	Same as #1	11h29m08s	11h28m59s

Since longitude is concerned only with 'time', the sextant angles have no significance until we get on to latitude. We find the mid-way time between sights 1 and 5 as they had a common sextant angle. This is also the average of the two times:

$$\begin{array}{r} 07h31m39s \\ + 11h28m59s \\ \hline = 19h00m38s \end{array}$$

Divide by 2 to average = 09h30m19s which is the MP time obtained from sights 1 and 5. We do the same for sights 2 and 4 and see that the MP time is not exactly the same:

$$\begin{array}{r} 08h46m42s \\ + 10h13m16s \\ \hline = 18h59m58s \end{array}$$

Divide by 2 to average = 09h29m59s - the time of MP obtained from sights 2 and 4.

We now take the two times obtained for MP and find the average which is used for the MP in the rest of the calculations. Note that there is 20 seconds between them which equates to 5 nautical miles - which one in fact was closer to the correct time for noon will never be known! If we had used three, four or more pairs of times having common sextant angles, we would have obtained more versions of MP time, so giving a more reliable average. Our average of the above two times for MP is:

$$\begin{array}{r} 09h30m19s \\ + 09h29m59s \\ \hline = 19h00m18s \end{array}$$

Divide by 2 for LMP = 09h30m09s

This is the time we set out to find - noon/MP where we are. Its accuracy may be slightly improved if we apply the 'LMP Adjustment' - usually ignored by yachtsmen - see the bottom of page 25 and page 26. The next step is to compare this time with that at which GMP occurs - when the sun passes over the

Greenwich meridian. One tends to think that noon at Greenwich is at 12h00m00s UTC (GMT) every day. This is not in fact the case as it can be over 16 minutes earlier or over 14 minutes later! It changes during the year and the Almanac will tell us on any given day the exact time of GMP, to the second. On the page in the Almanac for the date concerned, at the bottom right-hand corner of the right-hand facing page, we see a section headed 'Equation of Time'. The section for 28 February in our Almanac is as shown in Table 2. (Copies of the relevant Almanac pages can be found in Part 2 of this course.)

Day	SUN			MOON			
	Eqn. of Time		Mer.	Mer. Pass.		Age	Phase
	00 h	12 h	Pass.	Upper	Lower		
27	12 51	12 46	12 13	00 56	13 23	17	☾
28	12 40	12 35	12 13	01 50	14 17	18	
1	12 29	12 23	12 12	02 45	15 13	19	

Table 2. THE 'EQUATION OF TIME' AS IT APPEARS IN THE ALMANAC

Each pair of facing pages in the Almanac, with daily values (from 1 January to 31 December), has the data for three days - we see the days on our page(s) are 27 and 28 February and 1 March - as seen at the top of the page in the Almanac, although we are only looking at the Equation of Time section. Under the left half headed 'SUN' we see three columns, the left one being '00h' (midnight) which we do not use, the centre one being '12h' and the right hand one being 'Mer Pass.' Under the '12h' column, opposite the 28 for 28 th February, we see:

m      s  
12    35

This tells us that GMP differs from 12h00 UTC by 12 minutes and 35 seconds on 28 February. But is it earlier or later? We now look at the 'Mer Pass.' column and see:

h      m  
12    13

GMP is therefore 13 minutes *to the nearest minute*, after 12h00 UTC. The exact amount after 12h00 UTC is 12m35s so GMP on the 28 th February is at 12h12m35s UTC.

From our earlier (fictitious) determination of LMP being at 09h30m09s (assume it was on 28 February), the difference (always subtract the smaller from the larger) between LMP and GMP is:

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{GMP } 12\text{h}12\text{m}35\text{s} \\ \text{LMP } \underline{-09\text{h}30\text{m}09\text{s}} \text{ ('-' to get difference)} \\ \text{Difference} = \underline{\underline{2\text{h}42\text{m}26\text{s}}} \end{array}$$

Now since the earth rotates 360° in 24 hours, it will rotate:

180° in 12 hours and  
90° in 6 hours,  
15° in 1 hour,  
1° in 4 minutes,  
1' in 4 seconds and  
0,25' in 1 second.

So 2 hours 42 minutes and 26 seconds elapses as the earth rotates through an arc of:

2 hours = 30°  
40 mins = 10°, and  
2 minutes and 26 secs = 0°36,50'  
Total arc = 40°36,5'

LMP occurred before GMP therefore we must be East of Greenwich.

**Our longitude was therefore 40°36,5' East**

An easier way to convert the time difference to an angle would be to look up the 'Arc to Time Conversion Table' in the Almanac, the first of the yellow pages near the back of the book (see page 17 which forms part of our Almanac Extracts; the others are in the Almanac section of Part 2).

We see that, from the left, there are six columns each for 60° and each is sub-divided into two columns, the left half for degrees and the right for hours and minutes. Next to 1° we see '0h04m' (4 minutes),

next to 2°, '8 minutes', and so on. The right-hand third of the page has five vertical columns, the left being minutes (of angle/arc, not time) from 0' to 59'. The next four columns are for quarters of minutes (of arc), and each is headed by 'm s' for minutes and seconds.

Our LMP left us with a difference, relative to GMP, of 2 hours 42 minutes 26 seconds. To use this table to convert this time to an angle - we look for the time '2h42m' or the nearest lesser number being 2h40m, and next to it we see the angle '40°'. In the right hand section we look for the remainder of the total time, i.e. '2m26s', and see it appears opposite 36' and under 0'.50. So we are able to convert the time, 2h42m26s to the angle 40° 36.5'. Notice that in the left section the degrees and 'h m' increase as we go down the page by 4 minutes each line. If our time had been 2h45m07s, we look for the nearest value of time (2h44m) being just LESS than the actual time (2h45m - of our noon/MP) and we see 41°. We are then left with a balance of 1m07s. So in the right hand section of the page we look for '1m07s' and see it is opposite 16' and under 0'.75. The angle, which would be our Longitude, would then be 41° 16.75'.

If the time of LMP was later than that for GMP, we would be west of Greenwich and the amount would be found by using the 'Conversion of Arc to Time' table (see next page) just as we have done in the example above.

**LATITUDE**

Look back at Figures 18 to 23 on page 12. You will be reminded that there are six possible permutations depending on whether the Dec (Declination) is north or south, whether the DR latitude is north or south, and if 'DR Lat' and Dec are both north or south, whether DR Lat is less or greater than Dec.

**TA/Ho**

We will stay with the example we used earlier when five sight readings were taken on 28 February 199x. We determined that LMP was at 09h30m09s UTC (GMT) and at that time the (maximum) sextant angle was 53°12.8'. Let's assume that the height of eye at the time we took the LOWER LIMB sight was 4 metres and the IE (index error) was 2.7' OFF the scale. We must change this SA (Hs) -the sextant angle- to the TA (Ho) -the True Angle or True Altitude. See Chapter 1 if you need a reminder on how we do this. Here it is:

SA (or Hs)	53° 12.8'	
IE (+ for OFF)	+ 2.7'	
DIP (always -)	- 3.5'	(see DIP table)
AA	= 53° 12.0'	
Correction	+ 15.5'	(LL sight)
TA (or Ho)	= 53°27.5'	

**ZD**

In all of the six permutations, we need to know ZD (zenith distance) and Dec (declination). ZD is 90° minus TA. See Figure 16 on page 11. So our ZD is:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 90^\circ 00.0' \\
 - 53^\circ 27.5' \\
 \hline
 \text{ZD} = 36^\circ 32.5'
 \end{array}$$

**Declination**

Now we need Dec. (Declination). Using the time of 09h30m09s UTC which is our time for LMP on 28 February, we look up the daily pages in the Almanac for that day and see the pages cover three days, the top third of the pages (left and right) being for the 27 th, and the centre section for the 28 February. On the right hand page, left side, we find the detail for the sun.

Continued on page 18.

CONVERSION OF ARC TO TIME

0°-59°		60°-119°		120°-179°		180°-239°		240°-299°		300°-359°		0°-00	0°-25	0°-50	0°-75	
°	'	°	'	°	'	°	'	°	'	°	'	h	m	s	s	
0	0 00	60	4 00	120	8 00	180	12 00	240	16 00	300	20 00	0	0 00	0 01	0 02	0 03
1	0 04	61	4 04	121	8 04	181	12 04	241	16 04	301	20 04	1	0 04	0 05	0 06	0 07
2	0 08	62	4 08	122	8 08	182	12 08	242	16 08	302	20 08	2	0 08	0 09	0 10	0 11
3	0 12	63	4 12	123	8 12	183	12 12	243	16 12	303	20 12	3	0 12	0 13	0 14	0 15
4	0 16	64	4 16	124	8 16	184	12 16	244	16 16	304	20 16	4	0 16	0 17	0 18	0 19
5	0 20	65	4 20	125	8 20	185	12 20	245	16 20	305	20 20	5	0 20	0 21	0 22	0 23
6	0 24	66	4 24	126	8 24	186	12 24	246	16 24	306	20 24	6	0 24	0 25	0 26	0 27
7	0 28	67	4 28	127	8 28	187	12 28	247	16 28	307	20 28	7	0 28	0 29	0 30	0 31
8	0 32	68	4 32	128	8 32	188	12 32	248	16 32	308	20 32	8	0 32	0 33	0 34	0 35
9	0 36	69	4 36	129	8 36	189	12 36	249	16 36	309	20 36	9	0 36	0 37	0 38	0 39
10	0 40	70	4 40	130	8 40	190	12 40	250	16 40	310	20 40	10	0 40	0 41	0 42	0 43
11	0 44	71	4 44	131	8 44	191	12 44	251	16 44	311	20 44	11	0 44	0 45	0 46	0 47
12	0 48	72	4 48	132	8 48	192	12 48	252	16 48	312	20 48	12	0 48	0 49	0 50	0 51
13	0 52	73	4 52	133	8 52	193	12 52	253	16 52	313	20 52	13	0 52	0 53	0 54	0 55
14	0 56	74	4 56	134	8 56	194	12 56	254	16 56	314	20 56	14	0 56	0 57	0 58	0 59
15	1 00	75	5 00	135	9 00	195	13 00	255	17 00	315	21 00	15	1 00	1 01	1 02	1 03
16	1 04	76	5 04	136	9 04	196	13 04	256	17 04	316	21 04	16	1 04	1 05	1 06	1 07
17	1 08	77	5 08	137	9 08	197	13 08	257	17 08	317	21 08	17	1 08	1 09	1 10	1 11
18	1 12	78	5 12	138	9 12	198	13 12	258	17 12	318	21 12	18	1 12	1 13	1 14	1 15
19	1 16	79	5 16	139	9 16	199	13 16	259	17 16	319	21 16	19	1 16	1 17	1 18	1 19
20	1 20	80	5 20	140	9 20	200	13 20	260	17 20	320	21 20	20	1 20	1 21	1 22	1 23
21	1 24	81	5 24	141	9 24	201	13 24	261	17 24	321	21 24	21	1 24	1 25	1 26	1 27
22	1 28	82	5 28	142	9 28	202	13 28	262	17 28	322	21 28	22	1 28	1 29	1 30	1 31
23	1 32	83	5 32	143	9 32	203	13 32	263	17 32	323	21 32	23	1 32	1 33	1 34	1 35
24	1 36	84	5 36	144	9 36	204	13 36	264	17 36	324	21 36	24	1 36	1 37	1 38	1 39
25	1 40	85	5 40	145	9 40	205	13 40	265	17 40	325	21 40	25	1 40	1 41	1 42	1 43
26	1 44	86	5 44	146	9 44	206	13 44	266	17 44	326	21 44	26	1 44	1 45	1 46	1 47
27	1 48	87	5 48	147	9 48	207	13 48	267	17 48	327	21 48	27	1 48	1 49	1 50	1 51
28	1 52	88	5 52	148	9 52	208	13 52	268	17 52	328	21 52	28	1 52	1 53	1 54	1 55
29	1 56	89	5 56	149	9 56	209	13 56	269	17 56	329	21 56	29	1 56	1 57	1 58	1 59
30	2 00	90	6 00	150	10 00	210	14 00	270	18 00	330	22 00	30	2 00	2 01	2 02	2 03
31	2 04	91	6 04	151	10 04	211	14 04	271	18 04	331	22 04	31	2 04	2 05	2 06	2 07
32	2 08	92	6 08	152	10 08	212	14 08	272	18 08	332	22 08	32	2 08	2 09	2 10	2 11
33	2 12	93	6 12	153	10 12	213	14 12	273	18 12	333	22 12	33	2 12	2 13	2 14	2 15
34	2 16	94	6 16	154	10 16	214	14 16	274	18 16	334	22 16	34	2 16	2 17	2 18	2 19
35	2 20	95	6 20	155	10 20	215	14 20	275	18 20	335	22 20	35	2 20	2 21	2 22	2 23
36	2 24	96	6 24	156	10 24	216	14 24	276	18 24	336	22 24	36	2 24	2 25	2 26	2 27
37	2 28	97	6 28	157	10 28	217	14 28	277	18 28	337	22 28	37	2 28	2 29	2 30	2 31
38	2 32	98	6 32	158	10 32	218	14 32	278	18 32	338	22 32	38	2 32	2 33	2 34	2 35
39	2 36	99	6 36	159	10 36	219	14 36	279	18 36	339	22 36	39	2 36	2 37	2 38	2 39
40	2 40	100	6 40	160	10 40	220	14 40	280	18 40	340	22 40	40	2 40	2 41	2 42	2 43
41	2 44	101	6 44	161	10 44	221	14 44	281	18 44	341	22 44	41	2 44	2 45	2 46	2 47
42	2 48	102	6 48	162	10 48	222	14 48	282	18 48	342	22 48	42	2 48	2 49	2 50	2 51
43	2 52	103	6 52	163	10 52	223	14 52	283	18 52	343	22 52	43	2 52	2 53	2 54	2 55
44	2 56	104	6 56	164	10 56	224	14 56	284	18 56	344	22 56	44	2 56	2 57	2 58	2 59
45	3 00	105	7 00	165	11 00	225	15 00	285	19 00	345	23 00	45	3 00	3 01	3 02	3 03
46	3 04	106	7 04	166	11 04	226	15 04	286	19 04	346	23 04	46	3 04	3 05	3 06	3 07
47	3 08	107	7 08	167	11 08	227	15 08	287	19 08	347	23 08	47	3 08	3 09	3 10	3 11
48	3 12	108	7 12	168	11 12	228	15 12	288	19 12	348	23 12	48	3 12	3 13	3 14	3 15
49	3 16	109	7 16	169	11 16	229	15 16	289	19 16	349	23 16	49	3 16	3 17	3 18	3 19
50	3 20	110	7 20	170	11 20	230	15 20	290	19 20	350	23 20	50	3 20	3 21	3 22	3 23
51	3 24	111	7 24	171	11 24	231	15 24	291	19 24	351	23 24	51	3 24	3 25	3 26	3 27
52	3 28	112	7 28	172	11 28	232	15 28	292	19 28	352	23 28	52	3 28	3 29	3 30	3 31
53	3 32	113	7 32	173	11 32	233	15 32	293	19 32	353	23 32	53	3 32	3 33	3 34	3 35
54	3 36	114	7 36	174	11 36	234	15 36	294	19 36	354	23 36	54	3 36	3 37	3 38	3 39
55	3 40	115	7 40	175	11 40	235	15 40	295	19 40	355	23 40	55	3 40	3 41	3 42	3 43
56	3 44	116	7 44	176	11 44	236	15 44	296	19 44	356	23 44	56	3 44	3 45	3 46	3 47
57	3 48	117	7 48	177	11 48	237	15 48	297	19 48	357	23 48	57	3 48	3 49	3 50	3 51
58	3 52	118	7 52	178	11 52	238	15 52	298	19 52	358	23 52	58	3 52	3 53	3 54	3 55
59	3 56	119	7 56	179	11 56	239	15 56	299	19 56	359	23 56	59	3 56	3 57	3 58	3 59

Table 3. CONVERSION OF ARC TO TIME (AND VICE VERSA) TABLE





Using the left half of the page which applies to '30m' (30 mins), under the three columns each headed

	v or d	Corrn	
--	--------------	-------	--

look under the 'v or d' side of the column to find the factor, '0,9'. Next to this 0,9 and under 'Corrn' we see the correction, or 'Increment' which is 0,5'. To get the complete Dec we need, we must now take the hour value of Dec and subtract the Increment ('subtract' because Dec is decreasing every hour according to our Almanac, and therefore continuously decreasing).

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{Dec (hour value)} \quad S \ 7^{\circ}59,5' \\
 \text{Increment} \quad \quad \quad - \ 0,5' \\
 \hline
 \text{TOTAL DEC AT LMP} \quad S \ 7^{\circ}59,0'
 \end{array}$$

Note that no account is taken of the seconds part of the LMP time. This is because Dec is changing very slowly; if we were to calculate the increment for the seconds it would be so small as to form a value several decimal places of a minute (of angle of Dec). In half an hour the increment was only 0,5'

### The Latitude

Having found the values for Dec and ZD we can now find 'Lat'. If we were in the Northern Hemisphere (see Figures 18 to 20 on page 12):

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Lat} &= \text{ZD} - \text{Dec} \\
 &= 36^{\circ}32,5' - 7^{\circ}59,0' \\
 &= 28^{\circ}33,5'
 \end{aligned}$$

So our **LATITUDE is 28°33,5' North**

If we were in the Southern Hemisphere (see Figures 21 to 23 on page 12):

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Lat} &= \text{ZD} + \text{Dec} \\
 &= 36^{\circ}32,5' + 7^{\circ}59,0' \\
 &= 44^{\circ}31,5' \text{ S}
 \end{aligned}$$

(If we chose the wrong permutation we would end up with a number for Lat which is very far from the DR, or is greater than 90°, or is a minus quantity - all would be obviously wrong. The only time you may have difficulty will be near the equator when you are not sure whether you are on the north or south side of it. Don't worry because only one of the possible permutations will give a logical answer!).

### WORK SHEETS

Now for the good news! It is time to introduce you to the concept of 'work sheets' which are also, and probably more frequently, called 'idiot sheets'! A work sheet is a printed form on which the step-by-step process of doing a celestial navigation calculation is laid out. An example of the work sheet for the Noon or Meridian Passage sight calculation is shown on page 21. (On page 21.a. is another Work Sheet which can be used if 'LMP Adjustment' - pages 25/26 - is to be used for greater accuracy.) Here are some explanations about the work sheet:

Top Box, General Information:

Line 1. Writing the date avoids errors later, when looking up the Almanac data. It also serves as a reference later. Log, Course and Speed will facilitate DR Navigation from the fix, as well as possibly be relevant to plotting if the results are used with an earlier or later sight.

Line 2. Contains details that will be needed at the calculation stage.

Line 3. Reminds us that clock error must be known accurately for the calculation.

Second Box, 'ESTIMATING TIME OF LMP':

Line 4. Tells us to convert the DR Longitude to a time (Arc to Time table - first of the Yellow Pages in an Almanac).

Line 5. This time is subtracted from 12h00 if DR Longitude is East, and added if west: this is done preparatory to finding out the estimated time of LMP which in turn gives us an idea when to go out on deck to take the first sight (we try for a couple of hours or so before local noon).

Line 6. The Equation of Time (the difference of noon at Greenwich to 12h00m00s UTC) to facilitate a more accurate estimate of LMP. This we find in the bottom right hand corner of the two facing

pages in the Almanac for the current date. Look in the section labelled 'SUN', and under the column headed 'Mer Pass.' to get the number of minutes noon at Greenwich will be before or after 12h00. If the time stated is 12h07, the equation of time is plus 7 minutes (ignoring seconds as we are only calculating an estimate for LMP). If the time stated is 11h56, the equation of time is minus 4 minutes. The result is the Estimated LMP's time. We can now decide what time to go on deck for the first sight.

Third Box, 'LMP':

1. Write in the sextant angles recorded; angles 4 and 5 MUST be exactly the same as 2 and 1 respectively; if not, their times cannot be used.
2. In the column next to the Sextant Angle column, headed Clock Time of Sight, insert the exact clock times for each (except the time of the maximum angle - when time was not accurately discernable).

Fourth Box (three columns);

In this box we can add times 1 and 5, and get their average, as well as the average for 2 and 4. We can also average these two averages for a more accurate result, then apply the clock error to get the time of your noon or LMP. See "NB" below for 'LMP Adjustment (Page 21.a.).

Since we have been dealing with 'time', it is logical to stay with time to find Longitude before we work with angles to find Latitude.

Fifth Box, (Work Sheet 1, page 21) 'LONGITUDE':

See Line 6 above. Next to 'Mer Pass.' is the column headed '12h' which gives us the exact number of minutes and seconds for the equation of time. (We already know whether it is plus or minus.) With our newly determined time of LMP and that of GMP, the difference can be ascertained for converting to an angle (Arc to Time table) which will be our Longitude. If our LMP was before GMP, we must be East of the Greenwich meridian - Longitude is East.

Sixth Box, 'LATITUDE':

Now we determine Declination (as described on pages 16 to 19), Ho and ZD (page 19), and we are reminded of the six possible permutations of  $\text{Lat} = \pm\text{-ZD}, \pm\text{-Dec}$  as a guide as to which one to use. We must select according to the circumstances we are in. And the result is ~~Latitude~~

NB: On page 21.a., Work Sheet 1.a., there is another box which allows for a correction to the time of LMP due to any change in the Dec or change in the observer's Lat between the time of sight 1 and sight 5. Most yachtsmen leave this step out as the actual correction is usually so small.

Now we have both the Latitude and the Longitude as at LMP - we can plot the position on our chart, remembering to note, next to the position on the chart, the date, time, and log at the time the fix was taken.

Look at the unused Work Sheets on pages 21 and 21.a. - see how there are blank spaces where you have to fill the detail required, then add or subtract, to get the results needed. See how the Work Sheets have been used on pages 22 and 22.a., (Solution 1), initially leaving out the 'LMP Adjustment' and secondly including this step. Note the difference in the two answers for LMP and therefore in Longitudes.

Our subsequent examples will use Work Sheet 1, omitting the small 'LMP Adjustment' step.

In this example, Example 1 (pages 14 to 19), we will say that the additional relevant information about the sight was as follows:

DR Lat, 28°25' N, Long 40°30' E; Log 1234,5 Miles; Course 045°M (Variation 21°W); Speed 6,5 Knots.

Make sure you can find, in the Almanac section in Part 2, where all the extracted figures come from. If you have any difficulty, see Example 2 and its Solution 2, (page 24) with notes that follow the solution on page 25.

Then turn back to page 23 for example questions for you to try - the answers are in the 'Solutions' section in Part 2. Compare your workings with the solution supplied.

**MERIDIAN PASSAGE OR LOCAL NOON SIGHT WORK SHEET**

*By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc*

Date: ..... Log: ..... Course: .....°T/M/C. Speed: .....Knots  
 D.R. Lat: .....°.....' N/S, Long: .....°.....' E/W, IE: ..... ON(-)/OFF(+), Ht of eye: .....ft/m  
 CLOCK ERROR RELATIVE TO UTC/GMT: ..... h ..... m ..... s. FAST/SLOW? (- Fast,+ slow)

**ESTIMATING TIME OF LMP** Convert DR Long to 'time': = ..... h ..... m (nearest).  
 If East, 12h00 - 'time': = ..... h ..... m\*. If West, 12h00 + 'time': = ..... h ..... m\*. \*Apparent LMP.  
 Apparent LMP ± Eqn of time (± ..... m [nearest]) = Estimated time of LMP = .....h.....m

<u>LMP</u>	<u>Sight</u>	<u>SA/Hs</u>	<u>Clock Time</u>	
	# 1	° , ' , "	.....h.....m.....s	
	# 2	° , ' , "	.....h.....m.....s	
Max. angle at noon	# 3	° , ' , "	LMP - to be found	Approx?.....h.....m,
	# 4	Same as # 2	.....h.....m.....s	and Log:.....M
	# 5	Same as # 1	.....h.....m.....s	

Time # 1	.....h.....m.....s	Time # 2	.....h.....m.....s	Time (A)	.....h.....m.....s
Time # 5	+.....h.....m.....s	Time # 4	+.....h.....m.....s	Time (B)	+.....h.....m.....s
Total	=.....h.....m.....s	Total	=.....h.....m.....s	Total	=.....h.....m.....s
Average (A)	=.....h.....m.....s	Average (B)	=.....h.....m.....s	Average	=.....h.....m.....s
				Clock error±	.....h.....m.....s
				LMP	=.....h.....m.....s

**LONGITUDE**

Mid-day, 'Noon', at Greenwich assumed to be at ..... 12 h 00 m 00 s UTC  
 Eqn of Time, Almanac's date page, bottom right, + if after 12h..... ± .....m.....s  
 GMP, Greenwich Meridian Passage, Greenwich Noon..... =.....h.....m.....s (I)  
 LMP, Local Meridian Passage, Local Noon (from above box)..... °.....h.....m.....s (II)  
 Difference between GMP (I) and LMP (II) (Smaller from larger)..... =.....h.....m.....s

Convert Difference to an angle (Arc to Time); = Longitude ° , ' E/W (E if LMP earlier)

**LATITUDE**

**1. Declination:**

Dec Hour (LMP) value... N/S .....° .....  
 d Factor = .....(incr +, decr -) Corn .....  
 DECLINATION = N/S .....°.....'

**3. Zenith Distance:**

Max poss altitude ..90..°00..0.'  
 True Altitude (Ho) - .....°.....'  
 ZENITH DISTANCE = .....°.....'

**2. True Altitude (Ho):**

S.A. (Hs) .....°.....'  
 I.E. (- ON, + OFF).....+/- .....  
 DIP (-; from eye ht).....- .....  
 AA .....= .....°.....'  
 Main corn (Almanac card) +/- .....  
 T.A. (Ho) .....°.....'

**4. Latitude:**

Dec .....°.....' ZD  
 +/- ZD .....°.....' - Dec  
LAT = .....°.....' N/S

**If 'Dec' "N"**

DR Lat "N" of 'Dec' ..... Lat = Dec + ZD  
 DR Lat "N" but "S" of Dec....Lat = Dec - ZD  
 and DR Lat "S"...Lat = ZD - Dec

**If 'Dec' "S"**

DR Lat "S" of Dec ..... Lat = Dec + ZD  
 DR Lat "S" but "N" of Dec..Lat = Dec - ZD  
 DR Lat "N" .....Lat = ZD - Dec

Work Sheet 1. THE MERIDIAN PASSAGE OR NOON SIGHT WORK SHEET.

# NOTES

**MERIDIAN PASSAGE OR LOCAL NOON SIGHT WORK SHEET**

*By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc*

Date: ..... Log: ..... Course: .....°T/M/C. Speed: .....Knots  
 D.R. Lat: .....°.....' N/S, Long: .....°.....' E/W, IE: ..... ON(-)/OFF(+), Ht of eye: .....ft/m  
 CLOCK ERROR RELATIVE TO UTC/GMT: ..... h ..... m ..... s. FAST/SLOW? (- Fast,+ slow)

**ESTIMATING TIME OF LMP** Convert DR Long to 'time': = ..... h ..... m (nearest).  
 If East, 12h00 - 'time': = ..... h ..... m\*. If West, 12h00 + 'time': = ..... h ..... m\*. \*Apparent LMP.  
 Apparent LMP ± Eqn of time (± ..... m [nearest]) = Estimated time of LMP = .....h.....m

<u>LMP</u>	<u>Sight</u>	<u>SA/Hs</u>	<u>Clock Time</u>	
Details of sights:	# 1	°     '     "	.....h.....m.....s	
	# 2	°     '     "	.....h.....m.....s	
Max. angle at noon	# 3	°     '     "	LMP - to be found	Approx?.....h.....m, and Log:.....M
	# 4	Same as # 2	.....h.....m.....s	
	# 5	Same as # 1	.....h.....m.....s	

Time # 1	.....h.....m.....s	Time # 2	.....h.....m.....s	Time (A)	.....h.....m.....s
Time # 5	+.....h.....m.....s	Time # 4	+.....h.....m.....s	Time (B)	+.....h.....m.....s
Total	=.....h.....m.....s	Total	=.....h.....m.....s	Total	=.....h.....m.....s
Average (A)	=.....h.....m.....s	Average (B)	=.....h.....m.....s	Average	=.....h.....m.....s
				Clock error±	.....h.....m.....s
				LMP(Av)	=.....h.....m.....s

**LMP Adjustment\*** (Allows for North / South Movement of a Vessel and changing Declination.)

\*Ignore for vessels heading East - West/West - East during Solstices (18-24 June and 18-24 December), .

**Time adjustment (Seconds) = 15,28 x 'Y' x (Tan Lat +/- Tan Dec) = .....s**

Where Y = Vessel's Latitude change in 1 hour +/-\* Rate of change of Dec ('d').

[\*+/- : If changing in the same direction = "-"]

+/- = If Lat and Dec in opposite Hemispheres, Add; if same Subtract smaller from larger.

If Lat is changing towards the sun, or if stationary, if Dec is changing towards Lat, **True LMP** is earlier than **LMP(av)** above. If changing away, later.

LMP with N/S movement adjustment = **LMP(True)** = LMP (Av) +/- Time Adjustment.

**LMP (True) = .....h ..... m ..... s +/- .....s = ..... h ..... m ..... s**

**LONGITUDE**

Mid-day, 'Noon', at Greenwich assumed to be at.....

Eqn of Time, Almanac's date page, bottom right, + if after 12h.....

GMP, Greenwich Meridian Passage, Greenwich Noon.....

LMP, Local Meridian Passage, Local Noon (from above box).....

Difference between GMP (I) and LMP (II) (Smaller from larger).....

12 h 00 m 00 s	UTC
± .....m.....s	
=.....h.....m.....s	(I)
.....h.....m.....s	(II)
=.....h.....m.....s	

Convert Difference to an angle (Arc to Time); = **Longitude** ° ..... ' **E/W** (E if LMP earlier)

**LATITUDE** (At the time of True LMP)

**1. Declination:**

Dec Hour (LMP) value... N/S .....°.....'

d Factor = .....(incr +, decr -) Corn.....'

**DECLINATION = N/S.....°.....'**

**2. True Altitude (Ho):**

S.A. (Hs) .....°.....'

I.E. (- ON, + OFF).....+/-.....'

DIP (-; from eye ht).....-.....'

AA .....=.....°.....'

Main corm (Almanac card) +/-.....'

T.A. (Ho) .....°.....'

**3. Zenith Distance:**

Max poss altitude ..90..°00,0.'

True Altitude (Ho) - .....°.....'

**ZENITH DISTANCE = .....°.....'**

**4. Latitude\*:**

Dec .....°.....' ZD

+/- ZD .....°.....' - Dec

**LAT = .....°.....' N/S**

**\*If 'Dec' 'N'**

DR Lat "N" of 'Dec' ..... Lat = Dec + ZD

DR Lat "N" but "S" of Dec...Lat = Dec - ZD

and DR Lat "S"...Lat = ZD - Dec

**If 'Dec' 'S'**

DR Lat "S" of Dec ..... Lat = Dec + ZD

DR Lat "S" but "N" of Dec..Lat = Dec - ZD

DR Lat "N" .....Lat = ZD - Dec

# NOTES

## 'LMP ADJUSTMENT' CALCULATION

In the Work Sheet on the facing page, the 'LMP Adjustment' just shows an answer of 53 seconds which has to be added to the LMP previously obtained.

Lets see how we get these values:

$$\text{Time adjustment} = 15,28 \times Y \times (\text{Tan Lat} \pm \text{Tan Dec})$$

Y : a. 6,5 knots at 045°M (024°T) = 6,0 n.m. northwards/change in Lat. (This was done by plotting the course on a chart and measuring the vertical Lat change.)

b. Dec's rate of change (d = 0,9) was 0,9 n.m. in 1 hour

c. Dec was 'S' and decreasing, i.e. getting more North, and Lat was getting more North (they were changing in the same direction). So we subtract one from the other:  $Y = 6,0 - 0,9 = 5,1$

Tan Lat (from a scientific calculator, tables, or the graph below)

$$28^{\circ}25' = 28,4166^{\circ}$$

$$\text{Tan } 28,4166 = 0,5411$$

Tan Dec Dec = 7°59' = 7,9833°

$$\text{Tan Dec} = 0,1402$$

+/- = + (Lat and Dec are in opposite hemispheres; Lat is North, Dec is South)

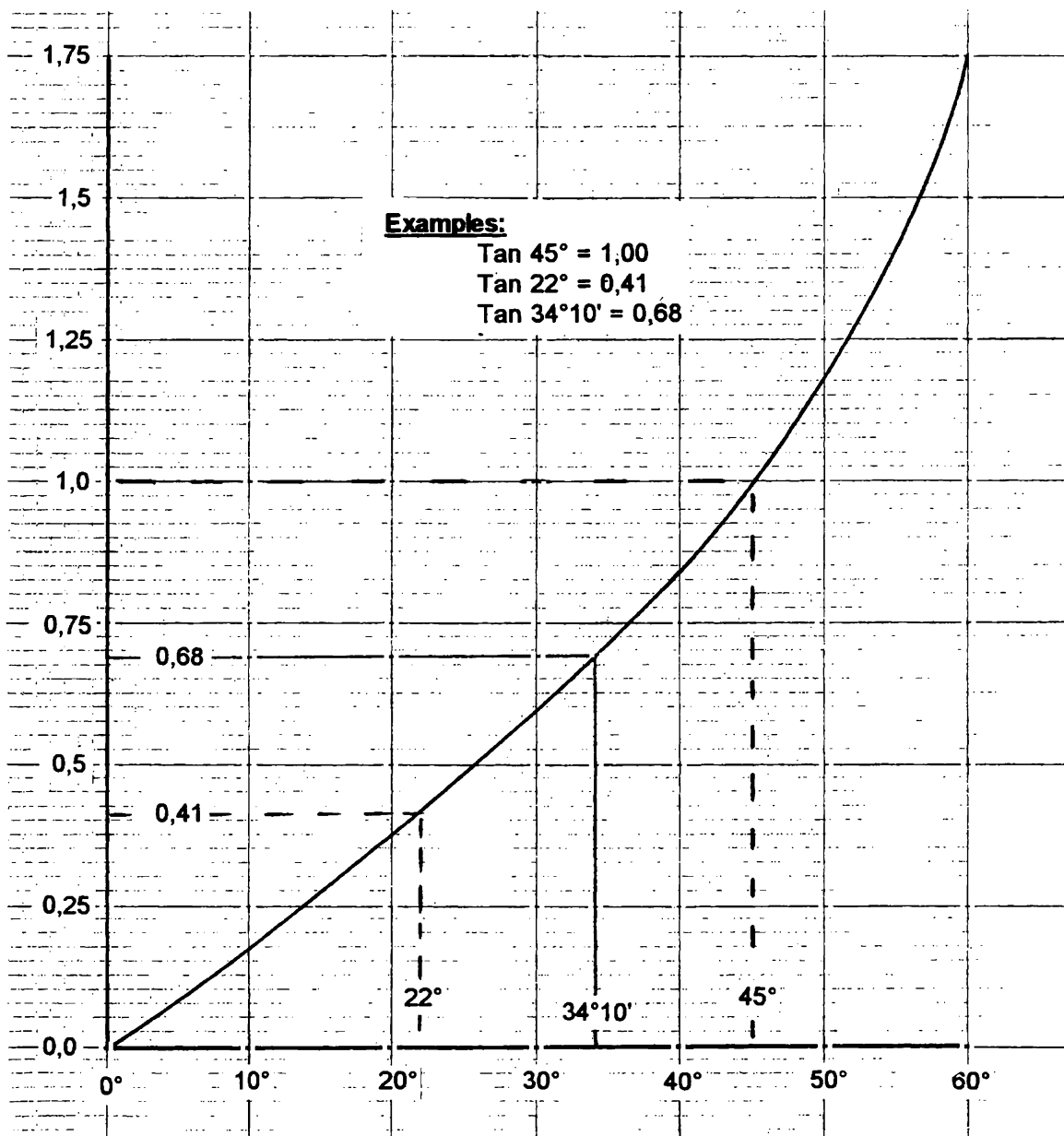
$$\text{So Time Adjustment} = 15,28 \times 5,1 \times (0,5411 + 0,1402)$$

$$= 53 \text{ seconds (to the nearest whole number)}$$

Lat is changing by becoming more north; lat is moving away from the sun,

so LMP is later by 53 seconds.

### Tan' Graph - for Latitudes up to 60°N/S and any Declination of the Sun



Using the example starting on page 14, our used Work Sheet would look like this:

**MERIDIAN PASSAGE OR LOCAL NOON SIGHT WORK SHEET**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: 28 Feb Log: 1 234.5 M Course: 045°M °T/M/C. Speed: 6.5 Knots  
 D.R. Lat: 28° 25' N/S, Long: 40° 30' E/W, IE: 2.7 ON/OFF(+), Ht of eye: 4.0 m  
 CLOCK ERROR RELATIVE TO UTC/GMT: ..... h ..... m 9 s. FAST/SLOW? (- Fast,+ slow)

**ESTIMATING TIME OF LMP** Convert DR Long to 'time': = ..... 2 h 42 m (nearest).  
 If East, 12h00 - 'time': = ... 9 h 18 m\*. If West, 12h00 + 'time': = ..... h ..... m\*. \*Apparent LMP.  
 Apparent LMP ± Eqn of time (± 13 m [nearest]) = Estimated time of LMP = ..... 9 h 31 m

LMP	Sight	SA/Hs	Clock Time	
	# 1	46° 26' 7"	07 h 31 m 48 s	Approx? <u>09</u> h <u>30</u> m, and Log <u>1234.5 M</u>
	# 2	52° 03' 2"	08 h 46 m 51 s	
Max. angle at noon	# 3	53° 12' 8"	LMP - to be found	
	# 4	Same as # 2	10 h 13 m 25 s	
	# 5	Same as # 1	11 h 29 m 08 s	

Time # 1	<u>07</u> h <u>31</u> m <u>48</u> s	Time # 2	<u>08</u> h <u>46</u> m <u>51</u> s	Time (A)	<u>9</u> h <u>30</u> m <u>28</u> s
Time # 5	+ <u>11</u> h <u>29</u> m <u>08</u> s	Time # 4	+ <u>10</u> h <u>13</u> m <u>25</u> s	Time (B)	+ <u>9</u> h <u>30</u> m <u>08</u> s
Total	= <u>19</u> h <u>00</u> m <u>56</u> s	Total	= <u>19</u> h <u>00</u> m <u>16</u> s	Total	= <u>19</u> h <u>00</u> m <u>36</u> s
Average (A)	= <u>9</u> h <u>30</u> m <u>28</u> s	Average (B)	= <u>9</u> h <u>30</u> m <u>08</u> s	Average	= <u>9</u> h <u>30</u> m <u>18</u> s
				Clock error ±	..... h ..... m <u>9</u> s
				LMP	= <u>9</u> h <u>30</u> m <u>09</u> s

**LONGITUDE**

Mid-day, 'Noon', at Greenwich assumed to be at.....	12 h 00 m 00 s	UTC
Eqn of Time, Almanac's date page, bottom right, + if after 12h.....	± + 12 m 35 s	
GMP, Greenwich Meridian Passage, Greenwich Noon.....	= 12 h 12 m 35 s	(I)
LMP, Local Meridian Passage, Local Noon (from above box).....	<u>9</u> h <u>30</u> m <u>09</u> s	(II)
Difference between GMP (I) and LMP (II) (Smaller from larger).....	= <u>2</u> h <u>42</u> m <u>26</u> s	

Convert Difference to an angle (Arc to Time); = Longitude 40° 36.5' E/W (E if LMP earlier)

**LATITUDE**

1. Declination:  
 Dec Hour (LMP) value... N/S 7° 59' 5"  
 d Factor = 0.9 (incr +, decr -) Corrn - 0.5'  
 DECLINATION = N/S 7° 59' 0"

2. True Altitude (Ho):  
 S.A. (Hs) ..... 53° 12' 8"  
 I.E. (- ON, + OFF)..... +/- + 2.7'  
 DIP (-; from eye ht)..... - - 3.5'  
 AA ..... = 53° 12' 0"  
 Main corrn (Almanac card) +/- + 15.5'  
 T.A. (Ho) ..... 53° 27.5'

3. Zenith Distance:  
 Max poss altitude ..90.° 00.0'  
 True Altitude (Ho) - 53° 27.5'  
 ZENITH DISTANCE = 36° 32.5'

4. Latitude:  
 Dec 36° 32.5' ZD  
 ✓ - ZD 7° 59' 0" - Dec  
 LAT = 28° 33.5' N/S

**If 'Dec' "N"**  
 DR Lat "N" of 'Dec' ..... Lat = Dec + ZD  
 DR Lat "N" but "S" of Dec... Lat = Dec - ZD  
 and DR Lat "S"... Lat = ZD - Dec

**If 'Dec' "S"**  
 DR Lat "S" of Dec ..... Lat = Dec + ZD  
 DR Lat "S" but "N" of Dec.. Lat = Dec - ZD  
 DR Lat "N" ..... Lat = ZD - Dec

Solution 1. SOLUTION TO EXAMPLE 1, STARTING ON PAGE 14 (TO 19).



**MERIDIAN PASSAGE OR LOCAL NOON SIGHT WORK SHEET**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: 28 Feb Log: 1234.5 Course: 045° M 7MIØ Speed: 6.5 Knots  
 D.R. Lat: 28° 25' N/S, Long: 40° 30' E/W, IE: 2.7 ON/OFF(+), Ht of eye: 4 ft  
 CLOCK ERROR RELATIVE TO UTC/GMT: ..... h ..... m -9 s. FAST/SLOW? (- Fast, + slow)

**ESTIMATING TIME OF LMP** Convert DR Long to 'time': = 2 h 42 m (nearest).  
 If East, 12h00 - 'time': = 9 h 18 m\*. If West, 12h00 + 'time': = ..... h ..... m\*. \*Apparent LMP.  
 Apparent LMP ± Eqn of time (± +13 m [nearest]) = Estimated time of LMP = 9 h 31 m

LMP	Sight	SAHs	Clock Time	
Details of sights:	# 1	46° 26' 7"	07 h 31 m 48 s	Approx? <u>09 h 30 m</u> , and Log: <u>1234.5M</u>
	# 2	52° 03' 2"	08 h 46 m 51 s	
Max. angle at noon	# 3	53° 12' 8"	LMP - to be found	
	# 4	Same as # 2	10 h 13 m 25 s	
	# 5	Same as # 1	11 h 29 m 08 s	
Time # 1			07 h 31 m 48 s	Time (A) <u>9 h 30 m 28 s</u>
Time # 5			+ 11 h 29 m 08 s	Time (B) + <u>9 h 30 m 08 s</u>
Total			= 19 h 00 m 56 s	Total = <u>19 h 00 m 36 s</u>
Average (A)			= 9 h 30 m 28 s	Average = <u>9 h 30 m 18 s</u>
				Clock error ± ..... h ..... m <u>-9</u> s
				LMP(Av) = <u>9 h 30 m 09 s</u>

**LMP Adjustment\*** (Allows for North / South Movement of a Vessel and changing Declination.)

\*Ignore for vessels heading East - West/West - East during Solstices (18-24 June and 18-24 December),

Time adjustment (Seconds) = 15,28 x 'Y' x (Tan Lat +/- Tan Dec) = 53 s

Where Y = Vessel's Latitude change in 1 hour +/- Rate of change of Dec ('d').

[\*+/- : If changing in the same direction = "-"]

+/- = If Lat and Dec in opposite Hemispheres, Add; if same Subtract smaller from larger.

If Lat is changing towards the sun, or if stationary, if Dec is changing towards Lat, **True LMP** is earlier than LMP(av) above. If changing away, later.

LMP with N/S movement adjustment = LMP(True) = LMP (Av) +/- Time Adjustment.

LMP (True) = 9 h 30 m 09 s + 53 s = 9 h 31 m 02 s

**LONGITUDE**

Mid-day, 'Noon', at Greenwich assumed to be at.....

Eqn of Time, Almanac's date page, bottom right, + if after 12h.....

GMP, Greenwich Meridian Passage, Greenwich Noon.....

LMP, Local Meridian Passage, Local Noon (from above box).....

Difference between GMP (I) and LMP (II) (Smaller from larger).....

12 h 00 m 00 s	UTC
± + 12 m 35 s	
= 12 h 12 m 35 s	(I)
9 h 31 m 02 s	(II)
= 2 h 41 m 33 s	

Convert Diff'ence to an angle (Arc to Time); = Longitude 40° 23' 25" E/W (E if LMP earlier)

**LATITUDE** (At the time of True LMP)

1. Declination:

Dec Hour (LMP) value... N/S 7° 59' 5"

d Factor = .....(incr +, decr -) Corn - 0.5'

DECLINATION = N/S 7° 59' 0"

2. True Altitude (Ho):

S.A. (Hs) ..... 53° 12' 8"

I.E. (-ON, + OFF)..... + 2.7'

DIP (-; from eye ht)..... - 3.5'

AA ..... = 53° 12' 0"

Main corn (Almanac card) +/- + 15.5'

T.A. (Ho) ..... 53° 27.5'

3. Zenith Distance:

Max poss altitude 90° 00' 0"

True Altitude (Ho) - 53° 27.5'

ZENITH DISTANCE = 36° 32.5'

4. Latitude\*:

Dec 36° 32.5' ZD ✓

+ ZD - 7° 59' 0" - Dec

LAT = 28° 33.5' N/S

**\*If 'Dec' 'N'**

DR Lat "N" of 'Dec' ..... Lat = Dec + ZD

DR Lat "N" but "S" of Dec..... Lat = Dec - ZD

and DR Lat "S".... Lat = ZD - Dec

**If 'Dec' 'S'**

DR Lat "S" of Dec ..... Lat = Dec + ZD

DR Lat "S" but "N" of Dec.. Lat = Dec - ZD

DR Lat "N" ..... Lat = ZD - Dec

# NOTES

Now it is time to see some examples of Noon Sight/Meridian Passage calculations. Use the Almanac extracts at the back of this book. All of these examples use Lower Limb sights of the sun.

### **EXAMPLE 2**

On 20 June at approximately 10h00 local time your DR is 15°40' N, and 80°25' E. Your MP sight detail is: IE 4,1' 'off'; clock 48 secs slow; height of eye 2,5 metres; LL sight; Sight 1 SA 79°52,0' at 04h51m04s; Sight 2 SA 81°06,5' at 05h40m26s; Sight 3 SA 82°05,0'; Sight 4 at 07h37m52s; Sight 5 at 08h26m39s. Log at MP 12 893 M, course 270°T, speed 5,5 knots. Times are clock times, clock set to UTC.

The worked solution appears on page 24 as Solution 2 - make sure you can find, in the Almanac (extracts, in part 2), all values extracted on to the work sheet. Help in this regard appears on page 25.

### **NOW YOU TRY THESE**

(Answers, 'Solutions', are in Part 2; as 'SOLUTION 3' to 'SOLUTION 7'.)

### **EXAMPLE 3**

Date 28 February, Log 31 106 m, Course 080°T, speed 4,5 knots, DR 38°45'N, 26°30' W, I.E. 2,6' 'on', Height of eye 3,3 metres. Clock 1m07s fast relative to UTC. Sight 1 SA 40°43,7' at 11h15m38s; Sight 2 SA 42°21,6' at 12h44m27s; Sight 3 SA 43°13,0' at approximately 14h00 at MP; Sight 4 at 15h14m06; Sight 5 at 16h43m25s.

### **EXAMPLE 4**

DR 10°45' S, 11°30' W; I.E. 3,6' 'on'; eye height 5 m; clock 43 s fast; course 320°T, speed 5,5 knots; Date 5 December, Log at noon 6 371,5 M. Sight 1, SA 70°01,8' at 10h00m48s; Sight 2, SA 73°49,9' at 11h05m17s; Sight 3 SA 78°06,3' at noon at approx 12h35; Sight 4 at 14h04m58s; Sight 5 at 15h10m09s.

### **EXAMPLE 5**

IE 1,8' 'off'; clock 6 s slow; eye height 4 m; DR 38° 12' N, 8° 50' E; Date 31 August; Log 7634 M; course 330°T; Speed 5 knots. Sight 1, SA 57°13,8' at 08h34m58s; Sight 2 SA 59°09,1' at 09h55m43s; Sight 3 SA 60°14,8' at LMP (at approx 11h26); Sight 4 at 12h52m23s; Sight 5 at 14h18m37s.

### **EXAMPLE 6**

On 20 June at DR 15°50' N, 165°40' E, IE 2,9' 'on', clock 22 s fast, eye height 2,5 m, course 200°T speed 7 knots, and log 8 643 M at midday, sights taken were as follows:

1. SA 77°53,0' at 22h01m37s (19 June).
2. SA 80°41,1' at 23h27m58s (19 June).
3. SA 82°19,4' at noon (+/- 01h00 UT 20 June).
4. At 02h30m16s
5. At 03h55m21s.

### **EXAMPLE 7**

DR 10°10' S, 128°40' W. Date 28 February 199x. I.E. 1,3' 'off'; eye height 3 m; clock 2m16s slow; log 372,0 M, course 265°T speed 6 knots. Sight 1 SA 81°26,5' at 18h04m01s. Sight 2 SA 85°08,4' at 19h15m48s. Sight 3 SA 87°27,2' at approximately 20h45 at LMP. Sight 4 at 22h14m03s. Sight 5 at 23h23m50s.

Solution 2.

**MERIDIAN PASSAGE OR LOCAL NOON SIGHT WORK SHEET**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: 20 June Log: 12893 Course: 270°T °T/M/C. Speed: 5.5 Knots  
 D.R. Lat: 15° 40' N/S, Long: 80° 25.0' E/W, IE: 4.1' ON(-)/OFF(+), Ht of eye: 2.5M  
 CLOCK ERROR RELATIVE TO UTC/GMT: ..... h ..... m 48 s. EAST/SLOW? (- Fast, + slow)

**ESTIMATING TIME OF LMP** Convert DR Long to 'time': = 5 h 22 m (nearest).  
 If East, 12h00 - 'time': = 6 h 38 m\*. If West, 12h00 + 'time': = ..... h ..... m\*. \*Apparent LMP.  
 Apparent LMP ± Eqn of time (± 1.1 m [nearest]) = Estimated time of LMP = 6 h 39 m

LMP	Sight	SA/Hs	Clock Time		
	#1	79° 52 , 0'	04 h 51 m 04 s	Approx? <u>6</u> h <u>40</u> m, and Log: <u>12893</u> M	
	#2	81° 06 , 5'	05 h 40 m 26 s		
Max. angle at noon	#3	82° 05 , 0'	LMP - to be found		
	#4	Same as #2	07 h 37 m 52 s		
	#5	Same as #1	08 h 26 m 39 s		
Time # 1	<u>04</u> h <u>51</u> m <u>04</u> s	Time # 2	<u>05</u> h <u>40</u> m <u>26</u> s	Time (A)	<u>06</u> h <u>38</u> m <u>51</u> s
Time # 5	<u>+08</u> h <u>26</u> m <u>39</u> s	Time # 4	<u>+07</u> h <u>37</u> m <u>52</u> s	Time (B)	<u>+06</u> h <u>39</u> m <u>09</u> s
Total	= <u>13</u> h <u>17</u> m <u>43</u> s	Total	= <u>13</u> h <u>18</u> m <u>18</u> s	Total	= <u>13</u> h <u>18</u> m <u>00</u> s
Average (A)	= <u>6</u> h <u>38</u> m <u>51</u> s	Average (B)	= <u>6</u> h <u>39</u> m <u>09</u> s	Average	= <u>6</u> h <u>39</u> m <u>00</u> s
				Clock error ±	..... h ..... m <u>48</u> s
				LMP	= <u>6</u> h <u>39</u> m <u>48</u> s

**LONGITUDE**

Mid-day, 'Noon', at Greenwich assumed to be at ..... 12 h 00 m 00 s UTC  
 Eqn of Time, Almanac's date page, bottom right, + if after 12h ..... ± ..... 1 m 29 s  
 GMP, Greenwich Meridian Passage, Greenwich Noon ..... = 12 h 01 m 29 s (I)  
 LMP, Local Meridian Passage, Local Noon (from above box) ..... = 6 h 39 m 48 s (II)  
 Difference between GMP (I) and LMP (II) (Smaller from larger) ..... = 5 h 21 m 41 s

Convert Difference to an angle (Arc to Time); = Longitude 80° 25' 25" E/W (E if LMP earlier)

**LATITUDE**

1. Declination:

Dec Hour (LMP) value... N/S 23° 25.9'  
 d Factor = 0.0 (incr +, decr -) Corr 00'  
 DECLINATION = N/S 23° 25.9'

3. Zenith Distance:

Max poss altitude .. 90° 00.0'  
 True Altitude (Ho) - 82° 22.1'  
 ZENITH DISTANCE = 7° 37.9'

2. True Altitude (Ho):

S.A. (Hs) ..... 82° 05.0'  
 I.E. (- ON, + OFF) ..... +/- + 4.1'  
 DIP (-; from eye ht) ..... - - 2.8'  
 AA ..... = 82° 06.3'  
 Main corr (Almanac card) +/- + 15.8'  
 T.A. (Ho) ..... 82° 22.1'

4. Latitude:

Dec 23° 25.9' ZD  
 M-ZD 7° 37.9' - Dec  
 LAT = 15° 48.0' N/S

**If 'Dec' 'N'**

DR Lat "N" of 'Dec' ..... Lat = Dec + ZD  
 DR Lat "N" but "S" of Dec... Lat = Dec - ZD  
 and DR Lat "S"... Lat = ZD - Dec

**If 'Dec' 'S'**

DR Lat "S" of Dec ..... Lat = Dec + ZD  
 DR Lat "S" but "N" of Dec.. Lat = Dec - ZD  
 DR Lat "N" ..... Lat = ZD - Dec

Solution 2. SOLUTION TO EXAMPLE 2, PAGE 23.

How did you get on? Let's go through it.

Lines 1 to 3. These lines just required you to write down a series of facts which were given to you - no problems.

Line 4.  $80^{\circ} 25'$  East longitude converted becomes  $80^{\circ} = 5\text{h}20\text{m}$   
 $25' = \underline{1\text{m}40\text{s}}$   
 $5\text{h}21\text{m}40\text{s}$  (5h22 to the nearest).

Line 5. The time, 5h22 is equivalent to 'DR Long'. Since we are 'East' we must subtract this time from 12h00. The result is 06h38 which we enter here as 'Apparent LMP'.

Line 6. In the Almanac (page in the Almanac Extracts section), in the bottom right-hand corner, 'Equation of Time', 'SUN', 'Mer Pass.' column opposite 20 for 20 June, we see 12h01m. This is 12h00 PLUS 1 minute - the "+1" minute is the value we need. It is the amount GMP differs from 12h00, "+" for after 12h00, "-" for before 12h00. So our 'Estimated Time of LMP' becomes  $06\text{h}38 + 1 = 06\text{h}39$  (UTC). It tells us approximately what time LMP will occur in terms of UTC, and therefore we have an idea at what time to take the first sight (usually about 2 hours before the expected LMP).

'LMP'. This section requires you to enter the Sextant Angles and Clock Time of each sight - and average the times taken for like sextant angles. Averages are averaged for a better result. Note that no account is taken initially of clock error - this is done once only; less chance for more errors. The actual LMP, time of local noon, emerges, BUT ...

**WARNING:** 1. Most errors in navigation are caused by wrong addition, subtraction, multiplication or division.  
2. See the top, and bottom of page 13 with the top of page 14 - Longitudes obtained using this method may be unreliable.

'LONGITUDE'. Here we are converting the reference time of 12h00 UTC to the time of GMP by adding the exact 'Equation of Time' value (1m29s). The difference of this time and the time of LMP is noted and converted to an angle which is the magnitude of 'Longitude'. It becomes 'Longitude' when we qualify it with 'East' or 'West'. Since LMP occurred before GMP (at 06h39m48s UTC), our longitude is 'East'.

'DECLINATION'. LMP was at 06h39m48s. On the daily page for June 20 th opposite 06h and under the 'Dec' column we see N  $23^{\circ}25,9'$ . At the bottom of that column we see the factor '0,0'. The increment for the '39m' (we ignore the '48s'-Dec changes slowly) we get from the yellow pages, page xxi, the page for '39 m'. Under the 'v or d' column opposite 0,0 we see the correction of 0,0'. If the factor and therefore the correction had been a number other than 0,0 it would be added to the 06h value if Dec was increasing, and subtracted if it was decreasing. In our case we can ignore it - it is zero.

'TRUE ALTITUDE'. This was covered in Chapter 1 and should be straight forward now. Check back if you need to.

'ZD'.  $90^{\circ} - \text{TA}$ ! Simple arithmetic.

'LAT' Choose the one out of the six permutations that applies:  $\text{Lat} = \text{Dec} - \text{ZD}$   
 The rest is plain sailing!

### **WARNING: SEXTANT MAXIMUM ANGLE AND MERIDIAN PASSAGE ANGLE (ALTITUDE)**

At or near the dates of Solstice (December and June), the rate of change of Dec is zero or very small. At equinox it is at its maximum. At equinox, a sight taken two hours before noon will not have the same Dec as a sight taken two hours after noon. And if the vessel is sailing at speed either north or south, the sextant angles will be larger or smaller than if taken on a stationary vessel where there will be no movement towards or away from the sun. East - West movement, strangely, does not affect the time.

The effect of changing Dec other than close to Solstice, and the vessel's movement north or south, have an effect on the SA at noon ; the maximum angle from the sextant can be a few minutes before or after meridian passage. The angle at MP may also be very slightly less than the maximum seen on the sextant (about less than half of 1' which we can therefore ignore - Latitude will be accurate enough).

**UNLESS STATIONARY, THEREFORE, LONGITUDES MAY BE VERY INACCURATE. So ...**

The exact time correction can be determined using the formula:

$$\text{Time (seconds)} = 15.28 \text{ (a constant)} \times 'Y' \times (\text{Tan Lat } +/- \text{ Tan Dec})$$

Where: 'Y' is the amount of change in one hour, of the north/south latitude in minutes of arc (determined from your vessel's course and speed), combined (added) with the rate of change of Dec ('d'). e.g:

If:

Dec at the time of LMP as per the worksheet, was S 15°48,6',

'd' (the rate of change of Dec) was 0,9

Latitude was determined to be 21°20' North, and

Course 225°True at 7 knots (i.e. 5 minutes change in Lat per hour)

$$\text{Then: } Y = 5 + 0,9 = 5,9$$

+/- is determined by whether Lat and Dec are both North or South, or if one is north while the other is south. If one is north while the other south, the combined angle effect is found by adding the Tan of each angle - if the two are in the same hemisphere, we subtract the smaller Tan from the largerTan.

Lets say:

Lat as at approximately noon/LMP (i.e. at the time of the maximum Sextant Angle) was found by the worksheet calculation method, to be 21°20' North, and Dec S 15°48,6'.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Time (seconds)} &= 15.28 \times 5,9 \times (\text{Tan } 21^{\circ}20' + \text{Tan } 15^{\circ}48,6') \\ &= 90,152 \times (0,3905 + 0,2832) \\ &= 61 \text{ seconds (to the nearest whole number)} \\ &= 1 \text{ minute } 01 \text{ seconds.} \end{aligned}$$

If Lat was changing towards the sun, Meridian Passage would have been 1min 01secs earlier than the LMP calculation on the worksheet.

As Lat was changing away from the sun, Meridian Passage was 1 minute 01 secs later than the worksheet LMP.

i.e. Vessel's movement towards the sun, SUBTRACT this time from the LMP per the worksheet.

Vessel's movement away from the sun, ADD this time to the LMP per the worksheet.

NB: If the vessel is (or almost) stationary, and the date near Solstice, 'Y' will be Zero, or almost Zero.

Any number x Zero = Zero, i.e. no time change effect.

If stationary but the date is near equinox, 'Y' may be as much as 1': in the above example it would make a time difference of about 10 seconds, or 2,5 miles.

### NOTES

## THE LOGIC OF NON-MERIDIAN PASSAGE SIGHTS

### LUNACY?

Non-meridian passage sights start by finding the DR position, then we arbitrarily change it to another position which we call the ASSUMED POSITION, or CHOSEN POSITION, then we set out to prove we are not there! No wonder land lubbers regard us as crazy. It is not as stupid as it sounds because by proving we are not at the Assumed or Chosen Position (AP/CP), we prove that we are on a line of position a known distance and direction from it.

### THE LOGIC

When we start sailing from a known point in one direction at a constant speed, we can at any moment thereafter very easily calculate how far we have moved and this is easily plotted on our chart as our 'DR' - our Deduced or Dead Reckoned position. No matter where this may be, we only have to move the DR a maximum of about 40 nautical miles and we can be at the intersection of a whole degree of latitude and a meridian marking a whole degree of longitude - at an AP/CP.

For the intersection of every degree of latitude and of longitude there are 'values' calculated in advance for us to use. They tell us what our True Altitude (TA or the angular height observed, Ho), and the direction (called AZIMUTH or Zn) from that place to the sun (or other celestial body), should be if we were at that place at any particular time.

So, for any second in time on any day during any year we can, if we have the right information available, calculate what the angular height (of a celestial body) will be at any of the intersections of degrees of latitude and longitude. The information we need is contained in the Almanac and Sight Reduction Tables - (see extracts in Part 2) - and the angular height (of the body) obtained from the calculations using the tables is called the Tabulated Altitude - it is the angular HEIGHT obtained from CALCULATION and has the symbol 'Hc'. Note the similarity to 'Ho' which is the angular HEIGHT measured from OBSERVATION using the sextant and corrected for IE (index error), DIP (height of eye), and SD (semi-diameter)/ Refraction.

If we happen to be at the intersection of one of these squares formed by the crossing of lines being the degrees of latitude and of longitude, and if we take an accurate sextant sight and use the tables correctly, we will find that the Ho obtained using the sextant will be the same as the Hc obtained from calculation using the tables.

If we were not exactly at the intersection there would be a difference in the values of Ho and Hc. The difference is called the 'Intercept'. As both Ho and Hc are angles, the intercept is also an angle. Unless our DR was very inaccurate, the Assumed or Chosen Position (the AP or CP) will be less than one degree (60 nautical miles) away from the actual position we are setting out to find - the intercept will be a number of minutes of a degree.

The actual position may be closer TOWARDS the celestial body than the AP or CP, or further AWAY from it. Look at the diagrams below:

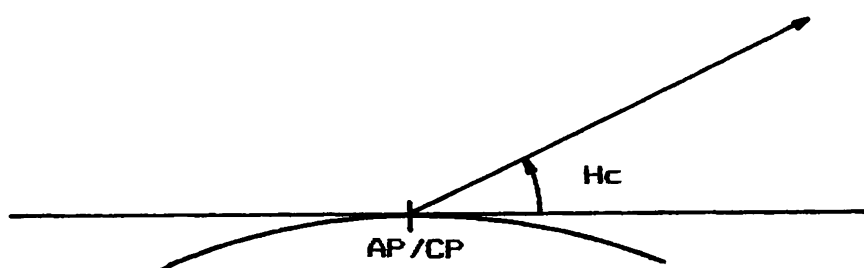


Fig. 26. 'Hc' AT THE AP / CP

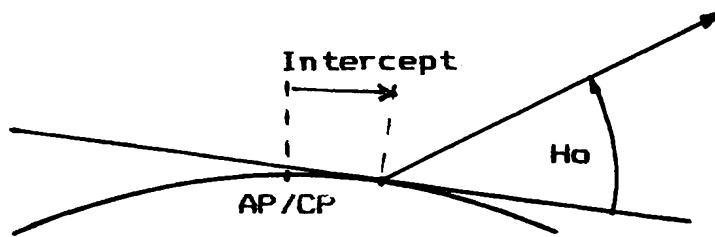


Fig. 27. 'Ho' IS LARGER THAN 'Hc', INTERCEPT IS 'TOWARDS'

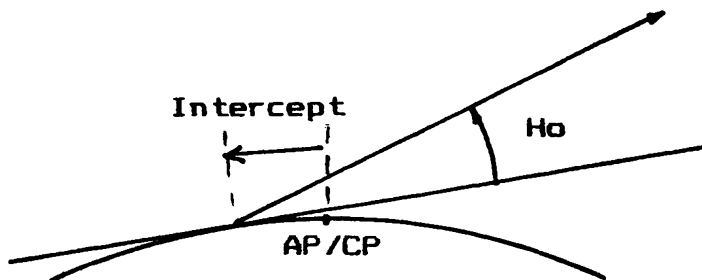


Fig. 28. 'Ho' IS SMALLER THAN 'Hc', INTERCEPT IS 'AWAY'

By definition, one nautical mile is the length of an arc of a great circle on the surface of the earth subtended by an angle of 1 minute at its centre, the centre of the earth. An intercept of 1' is also a distance of one nautical mile on the earth's surface. To be able to understand and accept this, look at these diagrams:

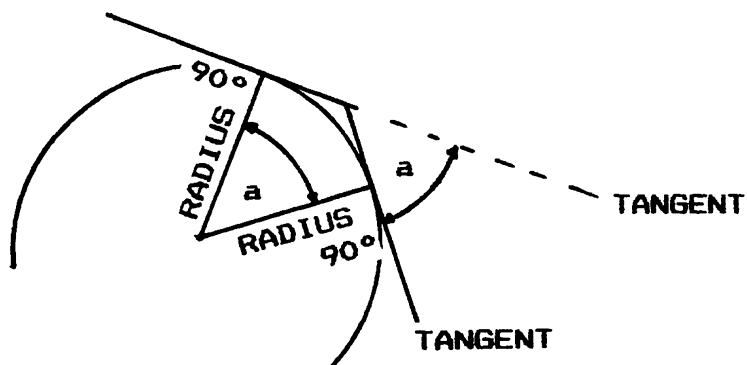


Fig. 29. ANGLE BETWEEN TANGENTS (HORIZONS) = ANGLE AT EARTH'S CENTRE.

No matter what the angle at the centre of the earth, the angle formed by the tangents will be the same.

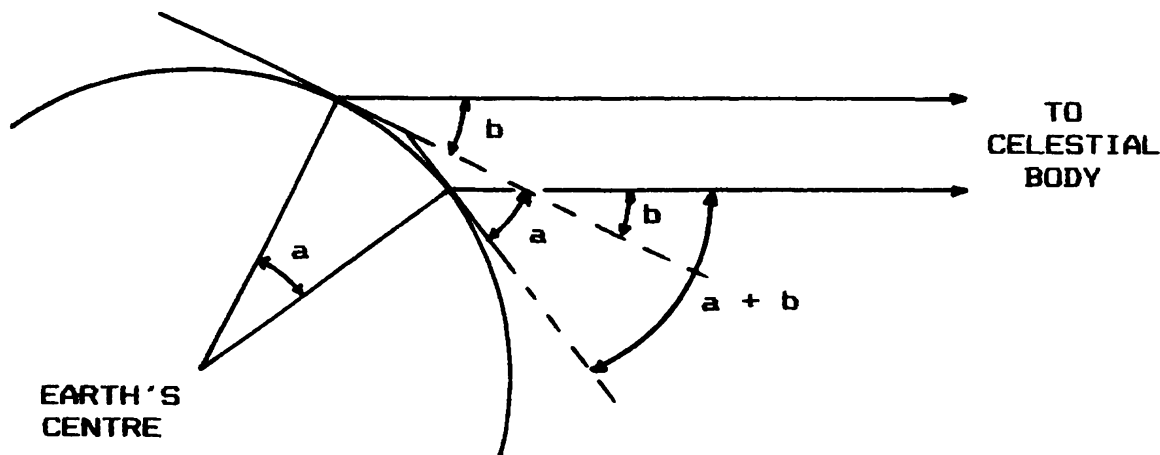


Fig. 30. ANGLE AT EARTH'S CENTRE = DIFFERENCE BETWEEN ANGLES TO SUN (STARS, ETC.)





As time moves on, so the earth continues to rotate on its axis and move along its orbital path around the sun. So the LOP we get from a sight of the sun in the morning will form an angle, and intersect, an LOP resulting from a sight taken in the afternoon. If we stayed at the same place during the day, the point at which the two LOPs intersected would be our 'fix' position. Three LOPs on the same day would be better as we would get a 'cocked hat' triangle, the centre of which would be our position - this is more reliable and accurate than the intersection of two LOPs. The latitude from a noon or Meridian Passage (MP) sight could be used for one of the LOPs, but do not use MP longitude because of the possible (probable?) error.

**THE ALMANAC FOR SUN'S GHA AND DEC**

The Almanac which is published annually, we have already seen, gives us DECLINATION. Declination angle affects the TABULATED ALTITUDE ( $H_c$ ) and the TRUE ALTITUDE ( $H_o$ ). If we were to measure  $H_o$  from exactly the same place, and at the same time of day on two occasions some months apart, we would get two different answers. This is due to 'Dec' changing as the days tick by. So we need 'Dec' when looking up  $H_c$  and  $Z_n$  (AZIMUTH) in the Sight Reduction Tables. We have already seen how to establish the value of Dec (see pages 16, 18, and 19).

The next value we need in order to use the Sight Reduction Tables is the latitude of the AP (or CP). Here we simply take the DR latitude and round it off to the nearest whole number of degrees. We also need to know if the latitude, be it north or south, is in the SAME or different (CONTRARY) hemisphere as the Dec. Is Dec north or south, are they both north or both south (SAME) or is one north and the other south (CONTRARY)?

Finally before we can go to the tables we need to know the LHA - the 'LOCAL HOUR ANGLE'.

**HOUR ANGLES**

When we looked at Noon/MP sights we saw that the earth rotates once every 24 hours through  $360^\circ$  and it therefore moves through an angle of  $180^\circ$  in 12 hours,  $90^\circ$  in 6 hours and so on. If we are able to look down on the earth from above the North Pole and see the reference meridian, the Greenwich Meridian, we would see:

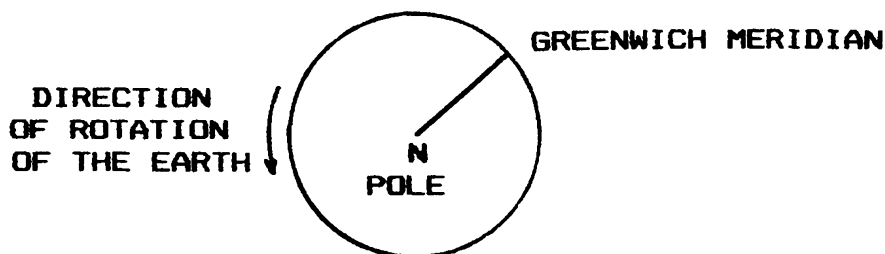


Fig. 33. THE EARTH, NORTH POLE AND GREENWICH MERIDIAN

The angle at the centre of the earth between the Greenwich Meridian and an imaginary line from the centre of the earth to the centre of the sun is called the GREENWICH HOUR ANGLE.

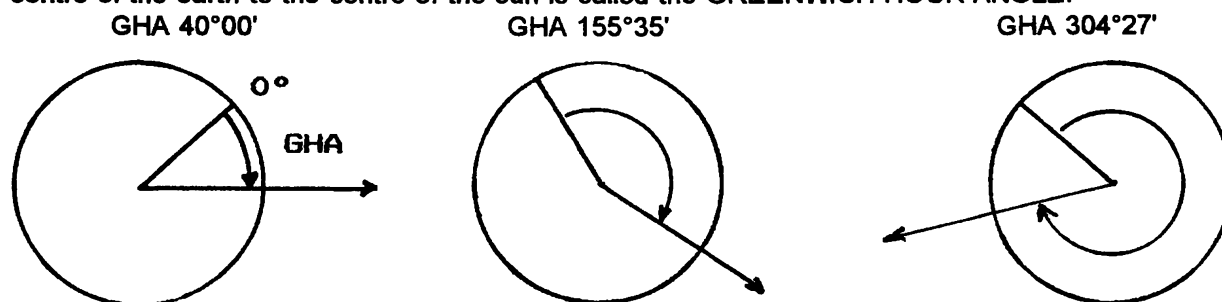


Fig. 34. THE GREENWICH HOUR ANGLE

The Greenwich Hour Angle, or 'GHA', is constantly increasing as the earth rotates. As with all hour angles, it is always measured from the meridian of interest (in this case Greenwich) in a westerly direction, from 0° to 360°. The angle is increasing at the rate of 1' every 4 seconds - so if we are to know the magnitude of this angle accurately for navigation purposes, we must have an accurate means of telling the time.

Let's assume we need to know GHA at 10h38m14s on 28 February 199x. We go to the Almanac daily page for that date, right-hand facing page, left side and we see the heading 'SUN' and below it to the left of where we found 'Dec' - Declination (pages 18 and 19), we see 'GHA'. At 10h (00m00s) GHA is 326°51,1'. See Table 7. Having got the value for 10h we need to find the extra 'bit' for the minutes and seconds - the increment of GHA. We turn to the yellow pages 'Increments and Corrections' and find the half page for 38 minutes. It has seven columns, the left being headed 's' (seconds) and the rows below the 's' are numbered from '00' to '60'. Our time was 38 minutes 14 seconds so having got the right page we look down the 's' column and along the '14' row to the adjacent column under the heading 'SUN PLANETS'. As this column applies to the sun, we extract the GHA incremental value 9°33,5'. See Table 8.

199- FEB. 27, 28, MAR. 1 (SUN., MON., TUES.)

49

UT (GMT)	SUN		MOON				Lat.	Twilight		Sunrise	Moonrise			
	G.H.A.	Dec.	Dec.	d	H.P.	Naut.		Civil	27		28	1	2	
27 00	176 47.4	8 30.5	346	0	44.8	13.4	60.5	05 16	06 34	07 43	20 48	23 02	25 31	01 31
01	191 47.4							05 21	06 37		20 49	22 43	24 52	00 52
02								05 26	06 42		20 50	22 44	24 53	00 53
03								05 31	06 47		20 51	22 45	24 54	00 54
04								05 36	06 52		20 52	22 46	24 55	00 55
05								05 41	06 57		20 53	22 47	24 56	00 56
06								05 46	07 02		20 54	22 48	24 57	00 57
07								05 51	07 07		20 55	22 49	24 58	00 58
08								05 56	07 12		20 56	22 50	24 59	00 59
09								06 01	07 17		20 57	22 51	25 00	01 00
10								06 06	07 22		20 58	22 52	25 01	01 01
11								06 11	07 27		20 59	22 53	25 02	01 02
12								06 16	07 32		21 00	22 54	25 03	01 03
13								06 21	07 37		21 01	22 55	25 04	01 04
14								06 26	07 42		21 02	22 56	25 05	01 05
15								06 31	07 47		21 03	22 57	25 06	01 06
16								06 36	07 52		21 04	22 58	25 07	01 07
17								06 41	07 57		21 05	22 59	25 08	01 08
18								06 46	08 02		21 06	23 00	25 09	01 09
19								06 51	08 07		21 07	23 01	25 10	01 10
20								06 56	08 12		21 08	23 02	25 11	01 11
21								07 01	08 17		21 09	23 03	25 12	01 12
22								07 06	08 22		21 10	23 04	25 13	01 13
23								07 11	08 27		21 11	23 05	25 14	01 14
24								07 16	08 32		21 12	23 06	25 15	01 15
25								07 21	08 37		21 13	23 07	25 16	01 16
26								07 26	08 42		21 14	23 08	25 17	01 17
27								07 31	08 47		21 15	23 09	25 18	01 18
28								07 36	08 52		21 16	23 10	25 19	01 19
29								07 41	08 57		21 17	23 11	25 20	01 20
30								07 46	09 02		21 18	23 12	25 21	01 21
31								07 51	09 07		21 19	23 13	25 22	01 22
32								07 56	09 12		21 20	23 14	25 23	01 23
33								08 01	09 17		21 21	23 15	25 24	01 24
34								08 06	09 22		21 22	23 16	25 25	01 25
35								08 11	09 27		21 23	23 17	25 26	01 26
36								08 16	09 32		21 24	23 18	25 27	01 27
37								08 21	09 37		21 25	23 19	25 28	01 28
38								08 26	09 42		21 26	23 20	25 29	01 29
39								08 31	09 47		21 27	23 21	25 30	01 30
40								08 36	09 52		21 28	23 22	25 31	01 31
41								08 41	09 57		21 29	23 23	25 32	01 32
42								08 46	10 02		21 30	23 24	25 33	01 33
43								08 51	10 07		21 31	23 25	25 34	01 34
44								08 56	10 12		21 32	23 26	25 35	01 35
45								09 01	10 17		21 33	23 27	25 36	01 36
46								09 06	10 22		21 34	23 28	25 37	01 37
47								09 11	10 27		21 35	23 29	25 38	01 38
48								09 16	10 32		21 36	23 30	25 39	01 39
49								09 21	10 37		21 37	23 31	25 40	01 40
50								09 26	10 42		21 38	23 32	25 41	01 41
51								09 31	10 47		21 39	23 33	25 42	01 42
52								09 36	10 52		21 40	23 34	25 43	01 43
53								09 41	10 57		21 41	23 35	25 44	01 44
54								09 46	11 02		21 42	23 36	25 45	01 45
55								09 51	11 07		21 43	23 37	25 46	01 46
56								09 56	11 12		21 44	23 38	25 47	01 47
57								10 01	11 17		21 45	23 39	25 48	01 48
58								10 06	11 22		21 46	23 40	25 49	01 49
59								10 11	11 27		21 47	23 41	25 50	01 50
60								10 16	11 32		21 48	23 42	25 51	01 51

Table 7. ALMANAC FOR GHA 'SUN' AT 10H ON 28 FEBRUARY 199x

38<sup>m</sup>

INCREMENTS AND CORRECTIONS

39<sup>m</sup>

s	SUN PLANETS	ARIES	MOON	v or Corr <sup>a</sup>			s	SUN PLANETS	ARIES	MOON	v or Corr <sup>a</sup>								
				d	'	"					d	'	"						
00	9 30-0	9 31-6	9 04-0	0-0	0-0	6-0	3-9	12-0	7-7	00	9 45-0	9 46-6	9 18-4	0-0	0-0	6-0	4-0	12-0	7-9
01	9 30-3	9 31-8	9 04-3	0-1	0-1	6-1	3-9	12-1	7-8	01	9 45-3	9 46-9	9 18-6	0-1	0-1	6-1	4-0	12-1	8-0
02	9 30-5	9 32-1	9 04-5	0-2	0-1	6-2	4-0	12-2	7-8	02	9 45-5	9 47-1	9 18-8	0-2	0-1	6-2	4-1	12-2	8-0
03	9 30-8	9 32-3	9 04-7	0-3	0-2	6-3	4-0	12-3	7-9	03	9 45-8	9 47-4	9 19-1	0-3	0-2	6-3	4-1	12-3	8-1
04	9 31-0	9 32-6	9 05-0	0-4	0-3	6-4	4-1	12-4	8-0	04	9 46-0	9 47-6	9 19-3	0-4	0-3	6-4	4-2	12-4	8-2
05	9 31-3	9 32-8	9 05-2	0-5	0-3	6-5	4-2	12-5	8-0	05	9 46-3	9 47-9	9 19-5	0-5	0-3	6-5	4-3	12-5	8-2
06	9 31-5	9 33-1	9 05-5	0-6	0-4	6-6	4-2	12-6	8-1	06	9 46-5	9 48-1	9 19-8	0-6	0-4	6-6	4-3	12-6	8-3
07	9 31-8	9 33-3	9 05-7	0-7	0-4	6-7	4-3	12-7	8-1	07	9 46-8	9 48-4	9 20-0	0-7	0-5	6-7	4-4	12-7	8-4
08	9 32-0	9 33-6	9 05-9	0-8	0-5	6-8	4-4	12-8	8-2	08	9 47-0	9 48-6	9 20-3	0-8	0-5	6-8	4-5	12-8	8-4
09	9 32-3	9 33-8	9 06-2	0-6	0-6	6-9	4-4	12-9	8-3	09	9 47-3	9 48-9	9 20-5	0-9	0-6	6-9	4-5	12-9	8-5
10	9 32-5	9 34-1	9 06-4	0-6	0-6	7-0	4-5	13-0	8-3	10	9 47-5	9 49-1	9 20-7	1-0	0-7	7-0	4-6	13-0	8-6
11	9 32-8	9 34-3	9 06-7	0-7	0-7	7-1	4-6	13-1	8-4	11	9 47-8	9 49-4	9 21-0	1-1	0-7	7-1	4-7	13-1	8-6
12	9 33-0	9 34-5	9 06-9	0-7	0-8	7-2	4-6	13-2	8-5	12	9 48-0	9 49-6	9 21-2	1-2	0-8	7-2	4-7	13-2	8-7
13	9 33-3	9 34-8	9 07-1	0-8	0-8	7-3	4-7	13-3	8-5	13	9 48-3	9 49-9	9 21-5	1-3	0-9	7-3	4-8	13-3	8-8
14	9 33-5	9 35-1	9 07-4	0-9	0-9	7-4	4-7	13-4	8-6	14	9 48-5	9 50-1	9 21-7	1-4	0-9	7-4	4-9	13-4	8-8
15	9 33-8			0-9	0-9	7-5	4-8	13-5	8-7	15				1-5	1-0	7-5	4-9	13-5	8-9

Table 8. INCREMENT PAGE SHOWING 38 MINUTES 14 SECONDS

So we have:

GHA (hour value - as at 10h)	326°51,1'
Increment (for 38m14s) add	+ 9°33,5'
GHA at 10h38m14s UTC	= <u>336°24,6'</u>

Note that the increment is always added, because as the earth turns, the GHA is getting bigger until it gets to 360° then it starts up from 0° (360°) towards 360° again - a never-ending, constant process.

Having found the value for GHA, we see the Sight Reduction Tables need 'LHA' - LOCAL HOUR ANGLE. To convert GHA to LHA we add or subtract our DR longitude. If our DR longitude is east of Greenwich we add it to GHA to get LHA; if it is west of Greenwich we subtract it from GHA to get LHA. Remember that hour angles are always measured from the meridian of interest westward to the line from the centre of the earth to the centre of the celestial body.

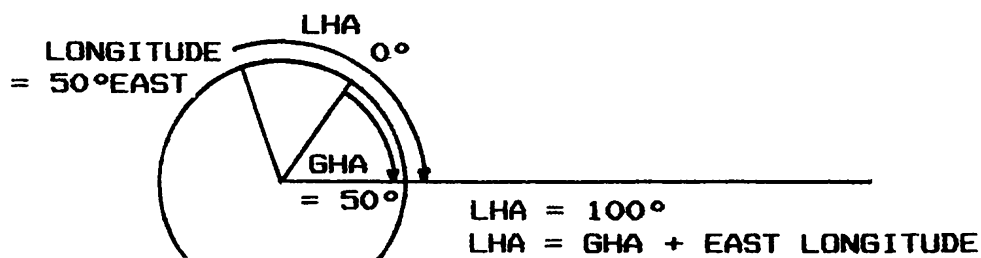


Fig. 35. LHA WHEN LONGITUDE IS 'EAST'

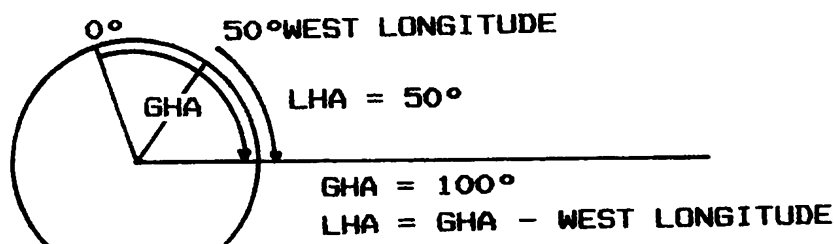


Fig. 36. LHA WHEN LONGITUDE IS 'WEST'

There is one minor complication. LHA as used in the Sight Reduction Tables must be a whole number of degrees. To achieve this, when we add or subtract our longitude to/from GHA, we add or subtract as required the number of degrees of our longitude but we change the number of the minutes of our longitude so that when added or subtracted to/from the minutes of GHA, the answer will be a whole number of degrees. This means we have changed the minutes of our DR longitude and we have a new longitude - the AP or CP longitude, 'ASSUMED' or 'CHOSEN LONGITUDE'.

As an example, assume our DR longitude is 37°49,2' East. If the GHA is the same as our earlier example, LHA will be:

GHA	336°24,6'
Chosen Longitude	<u>37°35,4'</u> East (so "+")
LHA	374°00,0' (LHA must be between 0° and 360°)
	<u>-360°00,0'</u> + or - 360° (if necessary)
LHA	<u>14°00,0'</u>

Note that the DR longitude (its minutes) was changed and it became the 'Chosen Longitude'.

Now what if the DR longitude was 'West'? When west, we subtract (see Figure 36.). The minutes of the DR longitude are changed to be the same as the minutes of GHA so that when subtracted, the result will be a whole number of degrees for LHA:

GHA	336°24,6'
Chosen Longitude	<u>- 37°24,6'</u> West (so "-")
LHA	299°00,0'
+/-360° (if nec)	<u>N/A</u> * See the top of the next page.
LHA	<u>299°00,0'</u>

\* It could and does happen that at times GHA is small and chosen longitude (west) is large so the initial LHA is negative. If this happens, we just add 360°. If LHA exceeds 360°, we subtract 360°.

### SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES

There are three main types of Sight Reduction Tables. See examples, pages 120/121 and in Part 2.

1. **Sight Reduction Tables for Air Navigation**. These are easy to use and were until recently required to be used in Yachtmaster Ocean examinations for the RYA and CASA certificates of competence. This has now changed and the candidate may use any tables or method as long as it does NOT involve the use of 'programmed' celestial navigation calculators. Ordinary scientific calculators are acceptable.

2. **Sight Reduction Tables for Marine Navigation**. These tables are very similar to the Air Tables, but although they allow a slightly greater degree of accuracy, they are more difficult to use, and more expensive volumes of the set of tables need to be purchased. The increase in accuracy over the Air tables is so small that the extra cost and complexity no longer justify their use. If, however, you already have and wish to use these tables both for this course and subsequent navigation, their use is explained in Appendix A, page 119.

3. **Concise Sight Reduction Tables - in the Almanac**. Since 1989 the Almanac has included a section of Reduction Tables which, the Almanac states, may be used when more comprehensive tables are not available. For the yachtsman or -woman the accuracy provided is quite good enough as, in the worst case, the error through inaccuracy is less than 2 miles. No one in this day and age on a yacht needs that degree of accuracy from celestial navigation. If you are possibly that close to danger and need a more accurate than 2 miles fix, you should either switch on the radar (if not already 'on') or stop/go back until conditions improve! The biggest advantage to using these tables is that there is only one book to get, use, stow and keep dry- and pay for!

There are other tables the navigator can use in stead of Sight Reduction Tables, such as Burton's and Norie's Tables. However, their use today is rare, so they will not be used on this course.

### USE OF SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES FOR AIR NAVIGATION

We will now look at the first type mentioned - Air Tables.

To use any Sight Reduction Tables one needs to know:

- a. The Chosen Latitude.
- b. The Declination.
- c. Whether the above two are SAME (same hemisphere) or CONTRARY (different hemispheres).
- d. The LHA.

There are six pages in the tables for every degree of latitude. The first three pages cover declinations from 0° to 14° and the next three cover declinations from 15° to 29°. Each set of three pages has one and a half pages under the heading SAME and the other one and a half under the heading CONTRARY. Volume 2 covers latitudes from 0° to 40° and Volume 3 covers latitudes from 39° to 89°. (Volume 1 is for use with star sights and will be dealt with later.)

Note there is a disadvantage to the use of these tables in that resolution of sights taken from celestial bodies whose declinations are greater than 30° is not possible. This affects some star sights, so stars with declinations greater than 30° and which are not one of the seven selected stars at a moment in time as used in the star tables (Volume 1), cannot be resolved with these tables. This will become clear when we do the star sight resolutions later.

Let's assume the following:

Chosen Latitude            15°00,0' North (the DR latitude 'rounded off to the nearest degree.)  
 Declination                17°38,1' South (obtained from the Almanac for the applicable date/time.)  
 LHA                         299°00,0' (GHA + East/- West Longitude.)

As Lat and Dec are in opposite hemispheres, CONTRARY applies.

So we go to Volume 2 of the Air Sight Reduction Tables (Volume 2 is for latitudes from 0° to 40° and Declinations up to 30°), and open it to the six pages which have LAT 15° printed in bold letters at the top. We see that the first three pages are for Declinations 0° to 14° so we look at the next three pages.



We find that the first of these three pages with LAT 15° is headed SAME, the next has SAME at the top and CONTRARY at the bottom, and the third page has the heading CONTRARY. We need to look at the second and third pages, down the side columns (either left or right will have our LHA) to find our LHA of 299°. We find it on the third page in the right-hand column, nine rows down. Opposite the 299° and in the column for '17°' of Dec, we see three numbers. The first is under the column headed 'Hc', the second 'd' and the third 'Z'. Note that the 'd' numbers are either '+' or '-'.

The Hc quoted (21°51') is the Hc that would apply IF the Dec were a whole number of degrees (17°00,0'). Our Dec is 17°38,1', so we have to take the 38,1' into account.

The number which appears under the 'd' column (25), is 'negative'- as seen by the '-' symbol which is repeated only on every 5 th line for the sake of clarity.

We take these two numbers, 38,1' and 25, to 'TABLE 5' of the Sight Reduction Tables (see Table 10 - next page). The 38,1' must be 'rounded off' to the nearest whole number as this table does not deal in fractions (decimals) of minutes.

(NB: Remember we said Air Tables were not as accurate as Marine Tables - the latter do not round off, but use every fraction/decimal).

Looking along the top we find '38' and we then look down the side column to opposite '25' and we see '16'. This is the 'd' value which is now to be subtracted (the 'd' factor was negative) from our Hc of 21°51' to get the Hc required: Hc = 21°35'.

The third value we found was 116° and it appeared under the column headed 'Z'. 'Z' is the symbol for AZIMUTH ANGLE which is not the same as AZIMUTH (Zn) which is the direction from the AP/CP to the celestial body. Z enables us to calculate Zn. (The explanation of the relationship between Z and Zn can be found on pages 58/59 in the section on the Spherical Triangle). Look back to the table on page 34. At the top and bottom left corners you will see:

At the top	N.Lat.	LHA greater than 180°.....	Zn = Z
		LHA less than 180°.....	Zn = 360° - Z
At the bottom	S.Lat.	LHA greater than 180°.....	Zn = 180° - Z
		LHA less than 180°.....	Zn = 180° + Z

Since our latitude is 'North', we use the top section and as our LHA was greater than 180° (it was 299°), we use

$$Zn = Z$$

So Zn is ..... Zn = 116° True

Our Air Tables have given us Hc and Zn relative to our chosen position. The difference between the Hc and Ho from the corrected sextant angle is the intercept. Knowing the Chosen Lat, Chosen Long, Azimuth and Intercept, and whether it is AWAY or TOWARDS, we can go to our plotting sheet and plot the resulting LOP. (Plotting will be discussed in detail later. At this stage see Figure 31 on page 29.)

On page 37 we have a work sheet designed for resolving sun sights using Air Tables. Have a quick look at it now. See how explanatory notes appear down the right-hand side. Once you have mastered it, you can use 'Work Sheet 2' which has three columns (see page 38) for three sights taken on the same day, but as you will appreciate, there is no room for all the detailed explanatory notes.

**Example 8.** A worked example (Solution 8.a.) appears on page 39 using the following facts recorded by the navigator: Date 5/12/199x; clock 7s fast; IE 3,4' on; height of eye 10 ft; Sun LL; course 360°T; speed 6 knots.

Sight 1: SA 39°40,4', DR Lat 15°15' N, Long 26°40' W, at 11h22m16s.

(The solution to the above is on page 39. To be of use to the navigator, two more sights are taken during the day so that the three LOPs will allow a 'cocked hat' triangle to be plotted and a fix position to be established. The other two sights' details are below - you try and get the answers, and only when you have or are 'stuck', look at the answers in the Solutions section in Part 2 - see Solution 8.b.). Sight 2: SA 52°02,0', DR Lat 15°28' N, Long 26°40' W, at 13h38m20s. Sight 3: SA 39°19,9', DR Lat 15°41' N, Long 26°40' W, at 15h52m43s.

(The 'Plotting' of the position from these sights is shown on page 74 as 'Solution 8 (Plotting.)')





**EXPLAINED WORK SHEET FOR SUN SIGHTS: AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: _____		Index Error of sextant, IE +/- _____, ' ;		Ht of Eye _____ ft/m, Lower or Upper limb of the sun 'LL/UL' _____ ;		Course _____ °T/M/C, Speed _____ Knots (for later plotting),	
DR Lat _____ ° _____ ' N/S, Long _____ ° _____ ' E/W, Clock error relative to UTC/GMT+/- _____ h _____ m _____ s.		<b>Chosen Latitude (C Lat)</b> _____ ° 00,0' N/S. (DR Lat 'rounded off' to nearest degree.)					
<b>TIME</b>							
Clock's time of sight:		_____ h	_____ m	_____ s	As per clock used, including error.		
Clock's error(to UTC)		_____ h	_____ m	_____ s	'+' Slow, '-' Fast		
UTC of sight		_____ h	_____ m	_____ s	For use in Almanac.		
<b>LHA</b>							
GHA (hour value)		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	Almanac, date page (right) 'SUN' opp Hour, UT of sight.				
Increment ('+')		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	Almanac's Yellow Pages, minutes page, seconds row.				
Total GHA		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	Sum of above two lines.				
-360° if nec		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	If above line exceeds 360°				
GHA Required		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "					
Chosen Longitude		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	E/W '+'E,'-'W; change 'mins' value so LHA is whole No of °.				
Total LHA		_____ ° 00,0'	May be '-', 0° to 360°, or >360°				
+/-360° if nec		_____ ° 00,0'	To get LHA to be between 0° and 360°				
<b>LHA Required</b>		_____ ° 00,0'	For use in Sight Reduction Tables.				
<b>DECLINATION</b> Almanac, date page, under 'SUN', next to GHA:							
Dec (as per hour of our sight) 'hour value': N/S _____ ° _____ ' Is it increasing or decreasing hourly?*							
'd' factor..... Bottom of 'Dec' Column							
d cornn (+/- *)		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	Yellow Pages, 'mins' (sight time) _____ ' Under 'v or d' Cornrs. **+' if Increasing.				
<b>Declination</b>		_____ N/S _____ ° _____ ' _____ "	For use in Sight Reduction Tables.				
<b>SAME or CONTRARY ?</b>				Dec and Lat both N or S, or one N, other S.			
<b>Hc</b>							
Tables Hc value		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	Select 'Tables' page for above Lat/Dec/SAME or CONTRARY/LHA as obtained above.				
'd'(+/-.....)		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	For use with mins of Dec in Table 5 to get next line...				
D Correction (+/-)		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	From Table 5-see above lines				
<b>Hc Required</b>		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	Sum/difference of above.				
<b>Zn</b>							
Tables value for Z:		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	Found with Hc and d in Sight Reduction Tables.				
Convert to Zn =		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	T. See the tables, outside the page margin, top and bottom left side, e.g. Top: "(If DR) N Lat, LHA > 180°, Zn = Z; LHA < 180°, Zn = 360° - Z." Bottom: "(If DR) S Lat, LHA > 180°, Zn=180°- Z; LHA < 180°, Zn = 180° + Z."				
<b>Ho</b>							
Sextant Angle		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	As read from the sextant's Index and Drum.				
Index Error(+/-)		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	From earlier calibrating.				
DIP(Ht of eye) (-)		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	Almanac's loose leaf card or its first page.				
Apparent Altitude		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	For use with same card.				
Main correction(+/-)		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	From card, choose correct 6 months column.				
True Altitude (TA/Ho)		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	To compare with Hc, above, to get Intercept.				
<b>Intercept</b>							
Ho		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	From above.				
Hc		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	From above, before 'Zn'.				
<b>Intcpt</b>		_____ ° _____ ' _____ "	Difference of above two. TOWARDS/AWAY? 'Towards' if Ho>Hc.				

Table 11. EXPLAINED WORK SHEET FOR AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES (SUN)

**WORK SHEET FOR A DAY'S (THREE) SUN SIGHTS: AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES**

*By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc*

Date:	IE: +/- , '(-On,+Off)	Eye ht: ft/m;	Clock error: h m s (Fast/Slow?)
Course:	°T/M/C; Speed:	Knots;	Upper or Lower Limb:
DR Latitude	° 'N/S	° 'N/S	° 'N/S
DR Longitude	° 'E/W	° 'E/W	° 'E/W
<b>Chosen Latitude</b> (Nearest whole degree)	° 00 ,0'N/S	° 00 ,0'N/S	° 00 ,0'N/S
<b>TIME</b> Clock time of sight	h m s	h m s	h m s
Clock error relative to UTC (-Fast,+Slow) +/-	h m s	h m s	h m s
<b>Corrected UTC time of sight</b> =	h m s	h m s	h m s
<b>LHA</b> GHA as at day, hour of sight; Almanac	° , '	° , '	° , '
+ Increment for mins/secs; Yellow pages +	° , '	° , '	° , '
Total GHA as at exact time of sight =	° , '	° , '	° , '
- 360° if nec; GHA to be between 0°/360° -	° , '	° , '	° , '
GHA Required =	° , '	° , '	° , '
<b>Chosen Longitude</b> (+ E, - W) +/-	° , 'E/W	° , 'E/W	° , 'E/W
Apparent LHA =	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'
+/- 360° if nec;LHA to be between 0°/360° +/-	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'
<b>LHA</b> =	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'
<b>DEC</b> as at day, hour of sight; next to GHA.	N/S ° , '	N/S ° , '	N/S ° , '
(d = ?) factor; bottom of the column: Exclude	(d = )	(d = )	(d = )
Cornn;Yellow p's, mins (+ if Dec increasing) +/-	, '	, '	, '
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b> =	N/S ° , '	N/S ° , '	N/S ° , '
Lat and Dec, <b>SAME</b> or not i.e. <b>CONTRARY?</b>			
<b>Hc</b> : Sight Redt. Tables (Page from C Lat) Hc:	° , '	° , '	° , '
(d+/-?)To be used with Dec's mins, Table 5.	(+/- )	(+/- )	(+/- )
d Correction. From Table 5. +/-	, '	, '	, '
<b>TOTAL Hc</b> (Transfer to Intercept, below) =	° , '	° , '	° , '
<b>Z→Zn</b> Top/bottom left corner of tables page.	Z ° , Zn °	Z ° , Zn °	Z ° , Zn °
<b>Ho</b> : Sextant Angle (Hs)(Upper/Lower Limb?)	° , '	° , '	° , '
IE (+/-) +/-	, '	, '	, '
DIP (Eye Ht cornn; Almanac card/1 st page) -	, '	, '	, '
Apparent Altitude (AA) =	° , '	° , '	° , '
Main Cornn; Al'nac card: check month, top. +/-	, '	, '	, '
Ho Ho =	° , '	° , '	° , '
<b>Intercept</b> : Ho - Hc or Hc - Ho: Hc =	° , 0'	° , 0'	° , 0'
<b>Intcpt</b> (Difference);TOWARDS or AWAY? ~	T/A , '	T/A , '	T/A , '

Solution 8.a.

**WORK SHEET FOR A DAY'S (THREE) SUN SIGHTS: AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES**

Date: <b>5 Dec '92</b> IE: +/- <b>3, 4</b> '(-On, ±Off) Eye ht: <b>10</b> ft/m; Clock error: h m <b>7</b> s (Fast/Slow?)			
Course: <b>360</b> °T/M/E, Speed: <b>6</b> Knots; Upper or Lower Limb: <b>Lower</b>			
DR Latitude	<b>15° 15' N/S</b>	° 'N/S	° 'N/S
DR Longitude	<b>26° 40' E/W</b>	° 'E/W	° 'E/W
Chosen Latitude (Nearest whole degree)	<b>15° 00, 0' N/S</b>	° 00, 0' N/S	° 00, 0' N/S
<b>TIME</b> Clock time of sight	<b>11 h 22 m 16 s</b>	h m s	h m s
Clock error relative to UTC (-Fast,+Slow) +/-	<b>h m -7s</b>	h m s	h m s
Corrected UTC time of sight =	<b>11 h 22 m 09 s</b>	h m s	h m s
<b>LHA</b> GHA as at day, hour of sight; Almanac	<b>347° 21, 6'</b>	° , '	° , '
+ Increment for mins/secs; Yellow pages +	<b>5° 32, 3'</b>	° , '	° , '
Total GHA as at exact time of sight =	<b>352° 53, 9'</b>	° , '	° , '
- 360° if nec; GHA to be between 0°/360° -	<b>— ° , '</b>	° , '	° , '
GHA Required =	<b>352° 53, 9'</b>	° , '	° , '
Chosen Longitude (+ E, - W) +/-	<b>-26° 53, 9' E/W</b>	° , 'E/W	° , 'E/W
Apparent LHA =	<b>326° 00, 0'</b>	° 00, 0'	° 00, 0'
+/- 360° if nec; LHA to be between 0°/360° +/-	<b>— ° 00, 0'</b>	° 00, 0'	° 00, 0'
LHA =	<b>326° 00, 0'</b>	° 00, 0'	° 00, 0'
<b>DEC</b> as at day, hour of sight; next to GHA.	<b>N/S 22° 22, 0'</b>	N/S ° , '	N/S ° , '
(d = ?) factor; bottom of the column: Exclude	<b>(d = 0, 3)</b>	(d = )	(d = )
Corrn; Yellow p's, mins (+ if Dec increasing) +/-	<b>+ 0, 1'</b>	, '	, '
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b> =	<b>N/S 22° 22, 1'</b>	N/S ° , '	N/S ° , '
Lat and Dec, <b>SAME</b> or not i.e. <b>CONTRARY?</b>	<b>CONTRARY</b>		
<b>Hc</b> : Sight Redt. Tables (Page from C Lat) Hc:	<b>40° 12'</b>	° , '	° , '
(d+/-?) To be used with Dec's mins, Table 5.	<b>(d/- 42)</b>	(+/- )	(+/- )
d Correction. From Table 5. +/-	<b>- 15'</b>	, '	, '
<b>TOTAL Hc</b> (Transfer to Intercept, below) =	<b>39° 57'</b>	° , '	° , '
<b>Z → Zn</b> Top/bottom left corner of tables page.	<b>Z137°, Zn137°</b>	Z °, Zn °	Z °, Zn °
<b>Ho</b> : Sextant Angle (Hs)(Upper/Lower Limb?)	<b>39° 40, 4'</b>	° , '	° , '
IE (+/-) +/-	<b>- 3, 4'</b>	, '	, '
DIP (Eye Ht corrn; Almanac card/1st page) -	<b>- 3, 1'</b>	, '	, '
Apparent Altitude (AA) =	<b>39° 33, 9'</b>	° , '	° , '
Main Corrn; Al'nac card: check month, top. +/-	<b>+ 15, 1'</b>	, '	, '
Ho Ho =	<b>39° 49, 0'</b>	° , '	° , '
<b>Intercept</b> : Ho - Hc or Hc - Ho: Hc =	<b>39° 57, 0'</b>	° , 0'	° , 0'
<b>Intcpt</b> (Difference); <b>TOWARDS</b> or <b>AWAY?</b> ~	<b>7/A 8, 0'</b>	T/A , ,'	T/A , ,'

Solution 8 from Example 8, page 35.

### **USE OF THE ALMANAC'S CONCISE SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES**

The calculations to get Ho, Dec, LHA (and therefore chosen longitude) and the changing of DR Lat to chosen latitude are the same no matter which sight reduction tables are being used.

Notice that the Almanac's tables (pages 286-317 in the Almanac; example for Latitudes 30° to 35° is shown on pages 42 and 43 as Table 12) cover 6° of latitude per two facing pages, and that the left vertical column is for LHA's from 0° to 180° AND values of 'F°' up to 180°, and the right-hand column is for LHA's from 180° to 360°. The six vertical columns for each degree of latitude are used twice; once using the Chosen Latitude (e.g. 34°N or S) to select which page (Almanac's page 296, our page 42) and column to use in order to get values for 'A', 'B', and 'Z1', and secondly using the nearest whole number of 'A' (A° just obtained) in place of the latitude (e.g. in place of 34°) on the applicable page, for values of 'H', 'P' and 'Z2'. 'A' and 'F' (the sum or difference of 'B' and Dec) are just factors used to find values for Hc). (See where these figures are entered on the worksheet, and the notes of explanation.)

Put another way, each main column of the tables is subdivided into three columns, and each has two headings: the first is 'A/H' (A and H), the next 'B/P' and the third 'Z1/Z2'. So each of these 'double headed' columns can be used for either value, i.e. the first for 'A' or for 'H', the second for 'B' or for 'P' and the third for 'Z1' or for 'Z2'. The reason is that we look up the tables once using LHA and Lat to get 'A' (and 'B' and 'Z1'), then we go to the pages with the number just obtained for 'A' (A°) instead of Lat at the top of the column, and opposite 'F°' (the sum or difference of B and Dec) to find 'H' (and 'P' and 'Z2'). This 'H' value is a major component of what will become Hc.

To get Hc we need the corrections to H which we get from the 'Auxiliary Tables' (Almanac pages 316 and 317, shown on pages 44 and 45) using the minutes part of the value for F' (obtained from the first values extracted from these tables) and P°, for the first correction, and then the minutes part of A' with Z2 to get the second correction.

The need to make values positive or negative when necessary appears complex at first glance. This process is not difficult to follow but it is very important to get it right. See the worksheet notes where applicable. As with all worksheets, each line should have a prompt or explanation what to do.

A work sheet for use when using the Almanac's concise Sight Reduction Tables is shown on page 41. Note that this 'Work Sheet 3' is not just for the sun; there are a few additional spaces for data relating to the moon, planets, and stars. When doing sun sight resolutions using this work sheet, we simply ignore these other spaces.

**EXAMPLE 9.** On page 46 is the worked example (Solution 9.) of a sun sight calculation based on the following information recorded by a navigator:

Date is 28 February 199x, and DR at the time of the sight is Lat 38°17' North, Long 26°10' West, when the Log reading is 4633. Index error is 3' 'on' the scale; height of eye 3,5 metres; clock error relative to UTC is 16 seconds fast. The sight is of the sun's lower limb while sailing 280° True at 7 knots (this information is recorded to facilitate plotting a fix with later sights, and for subsequent DR navigation). The sextant angle (SA/Hs) is 37°22,6'. Clock time of sight is 12h07m26s.

Follow it through step by step to make sure you see where each number is obtained, whether from the above information or from the Almanac (applicable extracts are in the 'Almanac' section in Part 2).

(This same example has been done using the Sine/Cosine method - see pages 56 and 57.)

Then try the Example Questions on page 47.



**SIGHT REDUCTION TABLE**

B: (-) for 90° < LHA < 270°  
 Dec: (-) for Lat. contrary name  
 Z<sub>1</sub>: same sign as B  
 Z<sub>2</sub>: (-) for F > 90°

Lat. / A	30°			31°			32°			33°			34°			35°			Lat. / A	
	LHA / F	A / H	B / P	Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	A / H	B / P	Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	A / H	B / P	Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	A / H	B / P	Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	A / H	B / P	Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	A / H	B / P		Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>
0	180	0 00	60 00	90.0	0 00	58 00	90.0	0 00	57 00	90.0	0 00	56 00	90.0	0 00	55 00	90.0	0 00	55 00	90.0	180
1	179	0 52	60 00	89.5	0 51	58 00	89.5	0 50	57 00	89.5	0 50	56 00	89.4	0 50	55 00	89.4	0 49	54 59	88.9	359
2	178	1 44	59 59	89.0	1 43	58 59	88.9	1 42	57 59	88.9	1 41	56 59	88.9	1 39	55 59	88.9	1 38	54 59	88.9	182
3	177	2 36	59 58	88.5	2 34	58 58	88.5	2 33	57 58	88.4	2 31	56 58	88.4	2 29	55 58	88.3	2 27	54 58	88.3	357
4	176	3 28	59 56	88.0	3 26	58 56	87.9	3 23	57 56	87.9	3 21	56 56	87.8	3 19	55 56	87.8	3 17	54 56	87.7	184
5	175	4 20	59 54	87.5	4 17	58 54	87.4	4 14	57 54	87.3	4 12	56 54	87.3	4 09	55 54	87.2	4 06	54 54	87.1	355
6	174	5 12	59 52	87.0	5 08	58 52	86.9	5 05	57 52	86.8	5 02	56 51	86.7	4 59	55 51	86.6	4 55	54 51	86.6	354
7	173	6 04	59 49	86.5	6 00	58 49	86.4	5 56	57 48	86.3	5 52	56 48	86.2	5 48	55 48	86.1	5 44	54 48	86.0	353
8	172	6 55	59 45	86.0	6 51	58 45	85.9	6 47	57 45	85.7	6 42	56 45	85.6	6 38	55 44	85.5	6 33	54 44	85.4	352
9	171	7 47	59 42	85.5	7 42	58 41	85.3	7 37	57 41	85.2	7 32	56 40	85.1	7 27	55 40	84.9	7 22	54 40	84.8	351
10	170	8 39	59 37	85.0	8 34	58 37	84.8	8 28	57 36	84.7	8 22	56 36	84.5	8 17	55 36	84.4	8 11	54 35	84.2	350
11	169	9 31	59 32	84.4	9 25	58 32	84.3	9 19	57 31	84.1	9 13	56 31	84.0	9 06	55 30	83.8	9 00	54 30	83.6	349
12	168	10 22	59 27	83.9	10 16	58 26	83.8	10 09	57 26	83.6	10 03	56 25	83.4	9 56	55 25	83.2	9 48	54 24	83.0	348
13	167	11 14	59 21	83.4	11 07	58 20	83.2	11 00	57 20	83.0	10 52	56 19	82.8	10 45	55 18	82.6	10 37	54 18	82.5	347
14	166	12 06	59 15	82.9	11 58	58 14	82.7	11 50	57 13	82.5	11 42	56 12	82.3	11 34	55 12	82.1	11 26	54 11	81.9	346
15	165	12 57	59 08	82.4	12 49	58 07	82.1	12 41	57 06	81.9	12 32	56 05	81.7	12 23	55 04	81.5	12 14	54 04	81.3	345
16	164	13 49	59 01	81.8	13 40	57 59	81.6	13 31	56 58	81.4	13 22	55 57	81.1	13 13	54 57	80.9	13 03	53 56	80.7	344
17	163	14 40	58 53	81.3	14 31	57 51	81.1	14 21	56 50	80.8	14 12	55 49	80.5	14 02	54 48	80.3	13 51	53 47	80.1	343
18	162	15 31	58 44	80.8	15 22	57 43	80.5	15 12	56 42	80.2	15 01	55 40	80.0	14 51	54 39	79.7	14 40	53 38	79.4	342
19	161	16 23	58 35	80.2	16 12	57 34	79.9	16 02	56 32	79.7	15 51	55 31	79.4	15 40	54 30	79.1	15 28	53 29	78.8	341
20	160	17 14	58 26	79.7	17 03	57 24	79.4	16 52	56 23	79.1	16 40	55 21	78.8	16 28	54 20	78.5	16 16	53 19	78.2	340
21	159	18 05	58 16	79.1	17 53	57 14	78.8	17 42	56 12	78.5	17 29	55 11	78.2	17 17	54 09	77.9	17 04	53 08	77.6	339
22	158	18 56	58 05	78.6	18 44	57 03	78.2	18 31	56 01	77.9	18 19	55 00	77.6	18 06	53 58	77.3	17 52	52 56	77.0	338
23	157	19 47	57 54	78.0	19 34	56 52	77.7	19 21	55 50	77.3	19 08	54 48	77.0	18 54	53 46	76.6	18 40	52 44	76.3	337
24	156	20 37	57 42	77.4	20 24	56 40	77.1	20 11	55 38	76.7	19 57	54 36	76.4	19 42	53 34	76.0	19 28	52 32	75.7	336
25	155	21 28	57 30	76.9	21 14	56 27	76.5	21 00	55 25	76.1	20 46	54 23	75.7	20 31	53 21	75.4	20 15	52 19	75.0	335
26	154	22 19	57 17	76.3	22 04	56 14	75.9	21 49	55 12	75.5	21 34	54 09	75.1	21 19	53 07	74.7	21 03	52 05	74.4	334
27	153	23 09	57 03	75.7	22 54	56 00	75.3	22 39	54 57	74.9	22 23	53 55	74.5	22 07	52 52	74.1	21 50	51 50	73.7	333
28	152	23 59	56 49	75.1	23 44	55 46	74.7	23 28	54 43	74.3	23 11	53 40	73.8	22 54	52 37	73.4	22 37	51 35	73.0	332
29	151	24 50	56 34	74.5	24 33	55 31	74.1	24 17	54 27	73.6	23 59	53 24	73.2	23 42	52 22	72.8	23 24	51 19	72.4	331
30	150	25 40	56 19	73.9	25 23	55 15	73.4	25 05	54 11	73.0	24 48	53 08	72.5	24 29	52 05	72.1	24 11	51 03	71.7	330
31	149	26 29	56 02	73.3	26 12	54 58	72.8	25 54	53 54	72.3	25 35	52 51	71.9	25 17	51 48	71.4	24 57	50 45	71.0	329
32	148	27 19	55 45	72.6	27 01	54 41	72.2	26 42	53 37	71.7	26 23	52 33	71.2	26 04	51 30	70.7	25 44	50 27	70.3	328
33	147	28 09	55 27	72.0	27 50	54 23	71.5	27 31	53 19	71.0	27 11	52 15	70.5	26 50	51 12	70.0	26 30	50 08	69.6	327
34	146	28 58	55 09	71.4	28 38	54 04	70.8	28 19	53 00	70.3	27 58	51 56	69.8	27 37	50 52	69.3	27 16	49 49	68.8	326
35	145	29 47	54 49	70.7	29 27	53 44	70.2	29 06	52 40	69.6	28 45	51 36	69.1	28 24	50 32	68.6	28 01	49 29	68.1	325
36	144	30 36	54 29	70.0	30 15	53 24	69.5	29 54	52 19	68.9	29 32	51 15	68.4	29 10	50 11	67.9	28 47	49 07	67.4	324
37	143	31 25	54 08	69.4	31 03	53 03	68.8	30 41	51 58	68.2	30 19	50 53	67.7	29 56	49 49	67.2	29 32	48 45	66.6	323
38	142	32 13	53 46	68.7	31 51	52 40	68.1	31 28	51 35	67.5	31 05	50 30	66.9	30 41	49 26	66.4	30 17	48 23	65.9	322
39	141	33 02	53 23	68.0	32 39	52 17	67.4	32 15	51 12	66.8	31 51	50 07	66.2	31 27	49 03	65.6	31 02	47 59	65.1	321
40	140	33 50	53 00	67.2	33 26	51 53	66.6	32 37	50 48	66.0	32 37	49 17	65.4	32 12	48 38	64.9	31 46	47 34	64.3	320
41	139	34 37	52 35	66.5	34 13	51 29	65.9	33 08	50 23	65.3	33 23	48 43	64.7	32 57	48 13	64.1	32 30	47 09	63.5	319
42	138	35 25	52 09	65.8	35 00	51 03	65.1	34 34	49 56	64.5	34 08	48 51	63.9	33 42	47 46	63.3	33 14	46 42	62.7	318
43	137	36 12	51 43	65.0	35 46	50 36	64.3	35 20	49 29	63.7	34 53	48 24	63.1	34 26	47 19	62.5	33 58	46 15	61.9	317
44	136	36 59	51 15	64.2	36 33	50 08	63.6	36 06	49 01	62.9	35 38	47 55	62.3	35 10	46 51	61.6	34 41	45 46	61.0	316
45	135	37 46	50 46	63.4	37 19	49 39	62.7	36 51	48 32	62.1	36 22	47 26	61.4	35 53	46 21	60.8	35 24	45 17	60.2	315

Table 12. a. TOP PAGE OF SIGHT REDUCTION DATA FOR 30° TO 35°

Only YACHTMASTERS' has the consistent high standards.

SIGHT REDUCTION TABLE

Lat. / A	30°			31°			32°			33°			34°			35°			Lat. / A		
	LHA / F	A / H	B / P	Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	A / H	B / P	Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	A / H	B / P	Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	A / H	B / P	Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	A / H	B / P	Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	A / H	B / P		Z <sub>1</sub> / Z <sub>2</sub>	LHA
45	135	37 46	50 46	63 4	62 7	49 39	62 7	36 51	48 32	62 1	36 22	47 26	61 4	35 53	46 21	60 8	35 24	45 17	60 2	225	
46	134	38 32	50 16	62 6	61 9	49 08	61 9	37 36	48 02	61 2	37 06	46 56	60 6	36 37	45 51	59 9	36 06	44 46	59 3	226	
47	133	39 18	49 45	61 8	61 1	48 37	61 1	38 20	47 30	60 4	37 50	46 24	59 7	37 19	45 19	59 1	36 48	44 15	58 4	227	
48	132	40 04	49 13	61 0	60 2	48 05	60 2	39 04	46 58	59 5	38 33	45 51	58 8	38 02	44 46	58 2	37 30	43 42	57 5	228	
49	131	40 49	48 39	60 1	59 4	47 31	59 4	39 48	46 24	58 6	39 16	45 18	57 9	38 44	44 12	57 2	38 11	43 08	56 6	229	
50	130	41 34	48 04	59 2	58 5	46 56	58 5	40 31	45 49	57 7	39 59	44 42	57 0	39 26	43 37	56 3	38 52	42 33	55 6	230	
51	129	42 18	47 28	58 3	57 5	46 20	57 5	41 14	45 12	56 8	40 41	44 06	56 1	40 07	43 01	55 4	39 32	41 57	54 7	231	
52	128	43 02	46 50	57 4	56 6	45 42	56 6	41 56	44 34	55 9	41 22	43 28	55 1	40 47	42 23	54 4	40 12	41 19	53 7	232	
53	127	43 46	46 11	56 4	55 6	45 03	55 6	42 38	43 55	54 9	42 03	42 09	54 1	41 28	41 44	53 4	40 52	40 41	52 7	233	
54	126	44 29	45 31	55 5	54 7	44 22	54 7	43 19	43 15	53 9	42 44	42 09	53 1	42 07	41 04	52 4	41 30	40 01	51 7	234	
55	125	45 11	44 49	54 5	53 7	44 00	53 7	44 00	42 33	52 9	43 24	41 27	52 1	42 46	40 23	51 4	42 09	39 19	50 7	235	
56	124	45 53	44 05	53 5	52 6	44 40	52 6	44 40	41 50	51 8	44 03	40 44	51 1	43 25	39 40	50 3	42 46	38 37	49 6	236	
57	123	46 35	43 20	52 4	51 6	45 58	51 6	45 20	41 05	50 8	44 42	39 59	50 0	44 03	38 55	49 3	43 24	37 53	48 5	237	
58	122	47 16	42 33	51 3	50 5	46 38	50 5	45 59	40 18	49 7	45 20	39 13	48 9	44 40	38 09	48 2	44 00	37 07	47 5	238	
59	121	47 56	41 44	50 2	49 4	46 38	49 4	46 38	39 30	48 6	45 58	38 25	47 8	45 17	37 22	47 1	44 36	36 20	46 3	239	
60	120	48 35	40 54	49 1	48 3	47 16	48 3	47 16	38 40	47 5	46 35	37 36	46 7	45 53	36 33	45 9	45 11	35 32	45 2	240	
61	119	49 14	40 01	47 9	47 1	47 53	47 1	47 53	37 48	46 3	47 11	36 45	45 5	46 29	35 42	44 7	45 46	34 42	44 0	241	
62	118	49 53	39 07	46 8	45 9	48 29	45 9	48 29	36 55	45 1	47 46	35 52	44 3	47 03	34 50	43 6	46 19	33 50	42 8	242	
63	117	50 30	38 11	45 5	44 7	49 05	44 7	49 05	36 00	43 9	48 21	34 57	43 1	47 37	33 57	42 3	46 53	32 57	41 6	243	
64	116	51 07	37 13	44 3	43 4	49 40	43 4	49 40	35 03	42 6	48 55	34 01	41 8	48 10	33 01	41 1	47 25	32 03	40 4	244	
65	115	51 43	36 12	43 0	42 2	50 14	42 2	50 14	34 04	41 3	49 28	33 03	40 6	48 43	32 04	39 8	47 56	31 07	39 1	245	
66	114	52 18	35 10	41 7	40 8	50 47	40 8	50 47	33 04	40 0	50 01	32 04	39 3	49 14	31 05	38 5	48 27	30 09	37 8	246	
67	113	52 52	34 05	40 3	39 5	51 19	39 5	51 19	32 07	38 7	50 32	31 02	37 9	49 44	30 05	37 2	48 56	29 10	36 5	247	
68	112	53 25	32 59	38 9	38 1	51 50	38 1	51 50	30 57	37 3	51 02	29 59	36 6	50 14	29 03	35 8	49 25	28 09	35 2	248	
69	111	53 57	31 50	37 5	36 7	52 21	36 7	52 21	29 50	35 9	51 32	28 53	35 2	50 43	27 59	34 5	49 53	27 06	33 8	249	
70	110	54 28	30 39	36 1	35 2	52 50	35 2	52 50	28 42	34 5	52 00	27 46	33 8	51 10	26 53	33 1	50 20	26 02	32 4	250	
71	109	54 58	29 25	34 6	33 8	53 18	33 8	53 18	27 31	33 0	52 28	26 38	32 3	51 37	25 46	31 6	50 46	24 56	31 0	251	
72	108	55 27	28 09	33 0	32 2	53 46	32 2	53 46	26 19	31 5	52 54	25 27	30 8	52 03	24 37	30 2	51 10	23 49	29 5	252	
73	107	55 55	26 51	31 4	30 7	54 12	30 7	54 12	25 04	30 0	53 19	24 14	29 3	52 27	23 26	28 7	51 34	22 40	28 1	253	
74	106	56 21	25 31	29 8	29 1	54 36	29 1	54 36	23 48	28 4	53 43	23 00	27 8	52 50	22 14	27 1	51 57	21 29	26 6	254	
75	105	56 46	24 09	28 2	27 5	55 00	27 5	55 00	22 30	26 8	54 06	21 44	26 2	53 12	21 00	25 6	52 18	20 17	25 0	255	
76	104	57 10	22 44	26 5	25 8	55 22	25 8	55 22	21 10	25 2	54 28	20 26	24 6	53 33	19 44	24 0	52 38	19 04	23 5	256	
77	103	57 33	21 17	24 8	24 1	55 43	24 1	55 43	19 48	23 5	54 48	19 06	23 0	53 53	18 27	22 4	52 57	17 49	22 9	257	
78	102	57 54	19 48	23 0	22 4	56 03	22 4	56 03	18 24	21 9	55 07	17 45	21 3	54 11	17 08	20 8	53 15	16 32	20 3	258	
79	101	58 13	18 17	21 2	20 7	56 21	20 7	56 21	16 59	20 1	55 25	16 22	19 6	54 28	15 48	19 2	53 31	15 15	18 7	259	
80	100	58 32	16 44	19 4	18 9	56 38	18 9	56 38	15 32	18 4	55 41	14 58	17 9	54 44	14 26	17 5	53 47	13 56	17 1	260	
81	99	58 48	15 10	17 6	17 1	56 53	17 1	56 53	14 03	16 6	55 56	13 33	16 2	54 58	13 03	15 8	54 00	12 36	15 4	261	
82	98	59 03	13 33	15 7	15 3	57 07	15 3	57 07	12 33	14 9	56 09	12 06	14 5	55 11	11 40	14 1	54 13	11 14	13 8	262	
83	97	59 16	11 55	13 8	13 4	57 19	13 4	57 19	11 02	13 0	56 21	10 38	12 7	55 22	10 14	12 4	54 24	9 52	12 1	263	
84	96	59 28	10 16	11 9	11 5	57 30	11 5	57 30	9 30	11 2	56 31	9 09	10 9	55 32	8 49	10 6	54 33	8 29	10 4	264	
85	95	59 37	8 35	9 9	9 6	57 39	9 6	57 39	7 56	9 1	56 40	7 39	9 1	55 41	7 22	8 9	54 41	7 06	8 7	265	
86	94	59 46	6 53	8 0	7 7	57 47	7 7	57 47	6 22	7 5	56 47	6 08	7 3	55 48	5 54	7 1	54 48	5 41	7 0	266	
87	93	59 52	5 11	6 0	5 8	57 52	5 8	57 52	4 47	5 6	56 53	4 36	5 5	55 53	4 26	5 4	54 53	4 16	5 2	267	
88	92	59 56	3 28	4 0	3 9	57 57	3 9	57 57	3 12	3 8	56 57	3 05	3 7	55 57	2 58	3 6	54 57	2 51	3 5	268	
89	91	59 59	1 44	2 0	1 9	57 59	1 9	57 59	1 36	1 9	56 59	1 32	1 8	55 59	1 29	1 8	54 59	1 26	1 7	269	
90	90	60 00	0 00	0 0	0 0	58 00	0 0	58 00	0 00	0 0	57 00	0 00	0 0	56 00	0 00	0 0	56 00	0 00	0 00	0 0	270

S. Lat.: for LHA > 180°... Z<sub>n</sub> = 180° - Z  
for LHA < 180°... Z<sub>n</sub> = 180° + Z

N. Lat.: for LHA > 180°... Z<sub>n</sub> = Z  
for LHA < 180°... Z<sub>n</sub> = 360° - Z

Table 12. b. BOTTOM PAGE OF SIGHT REDUCTION DATA FOR 30° TO 35°

ADJUSTMENT TO TABULAR ALTITUDE

P	F < 90° and F' > 29' : (-) corr.										A' < 30' : (-) corr.										Z <sub>d</sub>												
	F' / A'	1' 19'	2' 58'	3' 57'	4' 56'	5' 55'	6' 54'	7' 53'	8' 52'	9' 51'	10' 50'	11' 49'	12' 48'	13' 47'	14' 46'	15' 45'	16' 44'	17' 43'	18' 42'	19' 41'		20' 40'	21' 39'	22' 38'	23' 37'	24' 36'	25' 35'	26' 34'	27' 33'	28' 32'	29' 31'	30' 30'	F' / A'
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
11	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
12	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
13	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
14	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
15	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
16	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
17	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
18	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
19	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
20	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
21	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
22	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
23	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
24	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
25	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
26	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
27	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
28	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
29	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
30	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
31	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
32	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
33	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
34	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
35	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
36	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
37	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
38	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
39	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
40	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Table 13. a. TOP PAGE OF AUXILIARY TABLES



SIGHT REDUCTION TABLE

317

F/A'	1'	2'	3'	4'	5'	6'	7'	8'	9'	10'	11'	12'	13'	14'	15'	16'	17'	18'	19'	20'	21'	22'	23'	24'	25'	26'	27'	28'	29'	30'	F/A'	Z <sub>2</sub>			
P	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	37	36	35	34	33	32	31	30					
41	1	1	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	23	39
42	1	1	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	38	
43	1	1	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	37	
44	1	1	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	36	
45	1	1	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	35	
46	1	1	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	34	
47	1	1	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	33	
48	1	1	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	32	
49	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	31	
50	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	30	
51	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	29	
52	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	28	
53	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	27	
54	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	26	
55	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	25	
56	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
57	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
58	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
59	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
60	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
61	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
62	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
63	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
64	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
65	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
66	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
67	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
68	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
69	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
70	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
71	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
72	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
73	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
74	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
75	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
76	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
77	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
78	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
79	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
80	1	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6	7	7	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	

For Z<sub>2</sub> < 10°, use 10°.

For P > 80°, use 80°.

Table 13. b. BOTTOM PAGE OF AUXILIARY TABLES

Solution 9.

**WORK SHEET FOR USE WITH ALMANAC'S SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: <b>28/2 DR 38° 17' N/8, 26° 10' E/W; IE 3, 0' on/off, Eye ht: 34 ft/m, Body Sun W/LL</b> Course <b>280° T/M/E</b> , Speed <b>7</b> knots. Clock error to UTC h m <b>16</b> s (-fast, <del>slow</del> ?), Sight clock time <b>12 h 07 m 26</b> s, Sight Time Corrected to UTC(GMT) <b>12 h 07 m 10</b> s.			
<b>Ho</b>		↓ → Apparent Altitude (AA)	<b>37° 16.4'</b>
Sextant Angle (Hs)	<b>37° 22.6'</b>	Main Correction (Al'nac card) or (+/-) Moon Correction, back of Al'nac (+)	<b>+° 15.0'</b>
Index Error +/-	<b>- 3.0'</b>	Planet Correction (Almanac card)(+)	<b>° , '</b>
DIP (Height of eye) (-)	<b>- 3.2'</b>	Moon HP Corr (Back of Al'nac) (+)	<b>° , '</b>
Apparent Altitude (AA)	<b>37° 16.4' →</b>	↑ Moon UL Corr (-30.0' only if UL) (-)	<b>° , '</b>
Yachtmaster Ocean Services		<b>True Altitude (Ho)</b>	<b>37° 31.4'</b>
<b>DECLINATION</b>			
'Dec' as at day, hour of sight; Almanac.		<b>N/S 7° 56.6'</b>	Increasing/Decreasing* hourly? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
(d= ? at bottom of Dec column in Al'nac)		(d <b>0.9</b> )	Not part of sum. See next line.
d Corr, Yellow p's, Mins (time of sight)		+/- <b>- 0.1'</b>	*+ if Dec increasing, - if decreasing
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b>		<b>N/S 7° 56.0'</b>	Rounded off - nearest whole minute
<b>Chosen Latitude</b>		<b>38° 00.0' N/8</b>	DR Lat rounded off, nearest degree
<b>SAME or CONTRARY ?</b>		<b>CONTRARY</b>	Dec and Lat, SAME hemisphere?
<b>LHA</b>			
GHA (hr) Cel'stial Body, Al'nac	<b>356° 51.3'</b>	Date page, choose body's name column. Yellow p's; NB: Use correct column heading. Bottom of Planet column; or Moon, next to GHA; treat as d for Dec Corr, Yellow p's. Sum of above lines. GHA must be between 0° and 360°. GHA: angle, 0° westward, to meridian of GP. Almanac, left day page, right hand column. Omit this and above line if not for a star. DR degrees; mins to make LHA whole number. Angle, your meridian west to meridian of GP. LHA to be between 0° and 360°. Now we can start with the Sight Redn. Tables.	
Increment, for mins/secs. +	<b>1° 47.5'</b>		
v:( factor) +/--Planets;	<b>° , '</b>		
+Moon. Corr= +/-	<b>° , '</b>		
Total GHA =	<b>358° 38.8'</b>		
- 360° if above line >360° -	<b>° 00.0'</b>		
Total GHA if different. =	<b>° , '</b>		
SHA of Star +	<b>° , '</b>		
GHA of Celestial Body =	<b>358° 38.8'</b>		
Chosen Longitude ( <del>E</del> , -W) +/-	<b>-26° 38.8'</b>		
LHA of Celestial Body =	<b>332° 00.0'</b>		
+/- 360° if necessary +/-	<b>° 00.0'</b>		
LHA Required =	<b>332° 00.0'</b>		
<b>USE OF SIGHT REDUCTION TABLE (SRT)</b>		By Henton Jaaback	
1. Select SRT page with above 'Chosen Lat' Under Lat, opposite LHA (as above): <b>A° = 22°</b> (nearest whole degree), <b>A = 43'</b> <b>B = +48° 30'</b> , <b>Z1 = 71.9'</b> (B/Z1 if 90° < LHA < 270°)		3. Go to Auxiliary Table (pages 316/317). Under F' column opposite P° in left column, what is: <b>Corrn 1 ? +/- 23.0'</b> ('-' if F° < 90° and F° > 29°, or if F° > 90° and F° < 30'. Otherwise '+')	
Dec = +/- <b>7° 56' N/S</b> ( <del>SAME</del> , '-' CONTRARY) <b>F = +/- 40° 34'</b> (F° = +/- 41° (nearest degree), <b>F = 34'</b> )		4. Under A' column, opposite Z2 (right hand column), what is <b>Corrn 2 ? +/- 5.0'</b> (''-' if A' < 30°)	
2. SRT page with A° value as column heading. Under A° opposite F°; <b>H = 37° 28.0'</b> <b>P° = 62°</b> (nearest whole degree), <b>Z2 = 72.0'</b>			
Hc = <b>37° 28.0'</b>	<b>Z1 = +71.9°</b> + or - as for B.	<b>IF DR in N LAT:</b>	
Corrn 1 = <b>- 23.0'</b>	<b>Z2 = +72.0°</b> (If F° '-', use 180° - Z2). (Z2 is '-' if F° > 90°).	If LHA > 180° Zn = Z	
Corrn 2 = <b>+ 5.0'</b>		If LHA < 180° Zn = 360° - Z	
Hc = <b>37° 10.0'</b>	<b>Z = 143.9°</b> Ignore '-' if applic.	<b>IF DR in S LAT:</b>	
Ho = <b>37° 31.4'</b>		If LHA > 180° Zn = 180° - Z	
Intcpt = <b>21.4'</b> <b>TOWARDS</b>		If LHA < 180° Zn = 180° + Z	
<b>TOWARDS</b> if Ho > Hc, <b>AWAY</b> if Hc > Ho	<b>Zn = 144° T</b> (To nearest degree.)		

More Example Questions - try them on your own. Only when you have finished and got an answer, or are really and truly 'stuck', should you turn to the 'Solutions' section in Part 2. The answers to Examples 10 to 14 appear as Solutions 10 to 14 respectively; Solutions 10 to 12 make use of the Air Sight Reduction Tables method, and Solutions 13 and 14 use the Almanac Sight Reduction Table method.

### **EXAMPLE 10**

Look back at the information ending on page 40. Assume the vessel maintained her course and speed, and a second sight of the sun was taken at 14h52m43s. Index error, height of eye, sun's lower limb, and clock error remain the same. The new DR is 38°20' N, 26°30' W, and Log 4653. The sextant angle for this sight was 41°51,5'. Find the Chosen Lat/Chosen Long, the Zn, Intercept, and whether it was Towards or Away.

### **EXAMPLE 11**

As for Example 10 above, a third sight was taken at 18h22m58s from DR 38°23' N, 26°55' W, Log 4677. The sextant angle was 13°10,0'. What are the plotting details arising from this sight?

### **EXAMPLE 12**

On 31 August 199x with height of eye 4 metres, index error 2,7' 'on' the scale, clock 1 minute 52 seconds slow (to UTC), using the Sun's lower limb, course 360° T and speed 6,2 knots, three sights were taken during the day:

1. DR Lat 30°40' S, Long 80°12' E; Sextant angle 45°10,2'; time of sight as per clock 05h05m26s.  
Log 17 281 M.
2. DR Lat 30°31' S, Long 80°12' E; Sextant angle 50°38,2'; time of sight as per clock 06h36m47s.  
Log 17 290 M.
3. DR Lat 30°20' S, Long 80°12' E; Sextant angle 43°53,0'; time of sight as per clock 08h20m11s.  
Log 17 301 M.

Resolve the sights detail for the relevant plotting information.

### **EXAMPLE 13**

On 5 December 199x, using the Sun's UL, (NB: UL) and clock error 2 hours and 7 seconds fast in relation to UTC, I.E. 3,8' 'off', height of eye 3 metres, course 300° T, speed 5 knots, the detail from three sights during the day was as follows:

1. Sight 1; SA 43°12,3'; DR Lat 10°20' S, Long 165°17' E; Clock time of sight 23h38m18s (4 Dec UT). Log 8106 M.
2. Sight 2; SA 78°10,5'; DR Lat 10°13' S, Long 165°12' E; Clock time 02h52m35s. Log 8 120 M.
3. Sight 3; SA 65°06,7'; DR Lat 10°08' S, Long 165° 07' E; Clock time 04h22m31s. Log 8 130 m.

Resolve the above info for plotting the fix as at the latest (most recent) time.

### **EXAMPLE 14**

The date, 20 June 199x. The detail for three sun sights taken during the day are set out below. Details common to all three are: Course 315°T; IE 2,0' off, eye height 3,0 m, clock 23 seconds fast relative to UTC, and the lower limb of the sun was used. The individual sights detail was:

1. DR 30°45' S, 8°30' E; Log 8537 M; SA 26°00,7' at clock time 09h07m37s.
2. DR 30°32' S, 8°27' E; Log 8551 M; SA 35°46,3' at clock time 11h22m56s.
3. DR 30°18' S, 8°23' E; Log 8565 M; SA 25°53,7' at clock time 13h52m48s.

Resolve the three sights for the relevant plotting information.

NOTES

## THE SPHERICAL (OR 'PZX') TRIANGLE

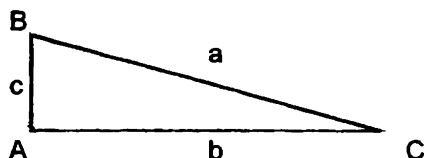
### INTRODUCTION

This method of resolving a celestial navigation sight's detail serves as a quick and easy way to find Z and Hc without the need for the use of Sight Reduction Tables. It is an acceptable method for the Yachtmaster Ocean examination and can be used as a quick way of checking other methods used. Ideally suited for use with a scientific calculator, it can also be used when only scientific logarithmic and trigonometric tables are available.

### THE TRIANGLE

Let's refresh from the beginning. A triangle has three sides! The three corners formed at the junction of the sides form angles which add up to 180°. So if one of the three angles is known, the sum of the other two must be the difference between 180° and the known angle. If two angles are known, by adding them and subtracting the answer from 180°, we get the third angle.

By convention, the three corners or angles are called A, B and C, and the sides opposite those angles are called a, b and c.



$$\begin{aligned} A &= 90^\circ \\ A + B + C &= 180^\circ \\ \text{If } B = 60^\circ, \text{ then } C &= 30^\circ \end{aligned}$$

Fig. 37. THE TRIANGLE ABC

If one were asked to draw the above triangle, and no dimensions of sides' lengths were specified, the permutations would be endless. All the possibilities are similar- they will all be enlargements of the smallest triangle drawn. Geometrically this means that the ratios of corresponding sides are the same. Specific names are given to specific ratios and the specific ratios are with respect to either of the acute angles (e.g. 30° or 60° in the above triangle). To identify corresponding sides we use the terms 'hypotenuse' (hyp), 'adjacent' (adj), and 'opp' for 'opposite'.

The 'hyp' is always the side opposite the right angle (A).

For B, 'c' is adjacent and 'b' is opposite.

For C, 'b' is adjacent and 'c' is opposite.

Two examples of ratios are 'sine' (sin) and 'cosine' (cos) and they are defined as follows:

$$\sin = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}} \quad \cos = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}}$$

Referring to the above triangle:

$$\sin 60^\circ(B) = \frac{\text{length of } b}{\text{length of } a} \quad \cos 60^\circ(B) = \frac{\text{length of } c}{\text{length of } a}$$

$$\sin 30^\circ(C) = \frac{\text{length of } c}{\text{length of } a} \quad \cos 30^\circ(C) = \frac{\text{length of } b}{\text{length of } a}$$

Our spherical triangle's sides are arcs (curves) of 'Great Circles'. However when viewed in the same plane as the great circle, the arcs (sides) are STRAIGHT LINES!

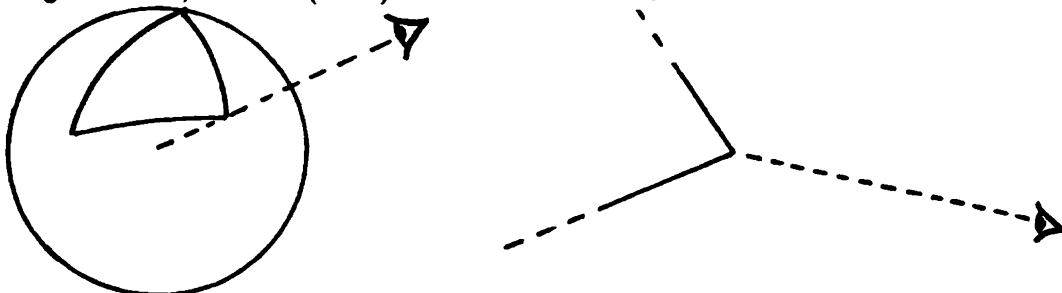


Fig. 38. ARCS AND 'STRAIGHT' SIDES OF A SPHERICAL TRIANGLE

If we were able to look at the corner of a spherical triangle from a point further away from that corner relative to the centre of the sphere, we would see that we were on the same planes as the two great circles whose arcs form the corner of the triangle. As we are on the same planes, the sides are straight lines! So the angle formed at their intersection is the same as it would be in a triangle on a flat surface. So the sum of the angles of a spherical triangle also add up to  $180^\circ$ , and the Sine and Cosine ratios remain valid.

**THE NAVIGATION TRIANGLE**

We are only really interested in a spherical triangle if the earth is the sphere and the triangle can help us navigate around it. We therefore refer to the NAVIGATION TRIANGLE which has three corners:

1. 'P' the pole, whether the North or the South pole.
2. 'Z' the position of the observer.
3. 'X' the geographic position of the celestial body. This is the position on the earth's surface which is in line with the centre of the earth and the centre of the celestial body.

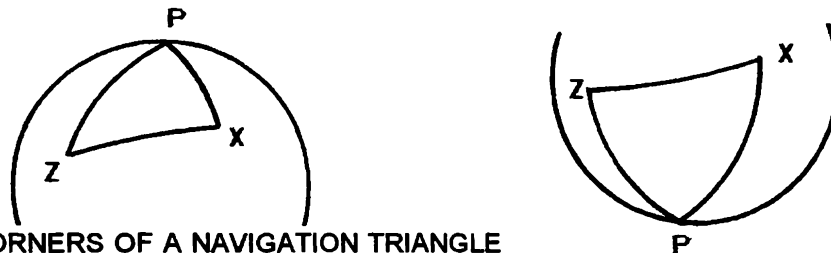


Fig. 39. THE CORNERS OF A NAVIGATION TRIANGLE

...and the three sides:

- A. 'Co latitude' the difference between the observer's latitude and  $90^\circ$ . It is also known as 'Latitude Distance'.
- B. 'Co declination' the difference between the declination of the celestial body and  $90^\circ$ .
- C. 'Co altitude' the difference between the altitude (corrected sextant angle) of the celestial body and  $90^\circ$ . It is the same as Zenith Distance which we saw used with Meridian Passage (Noon) sight calculations in Chapter 2.

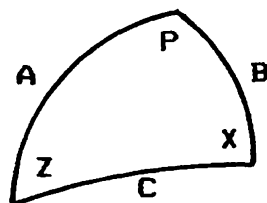


Fig. 40. THE SIDES OF A NAVIGATION TRIANGLE

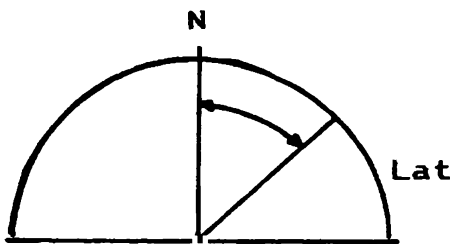


Fig. 41. CO LATITUDE

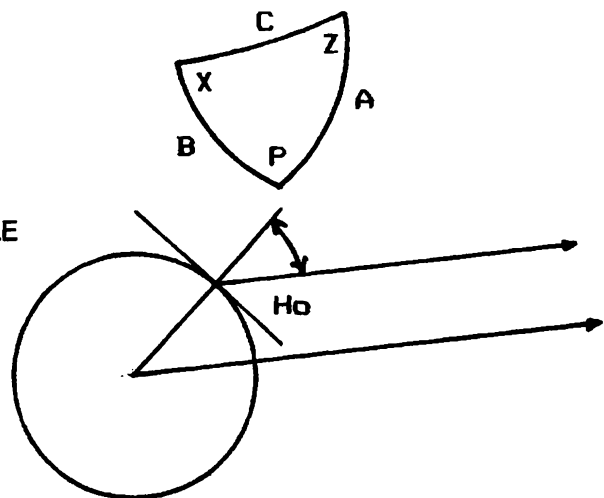


Fig. 42. CO ALTITUDE

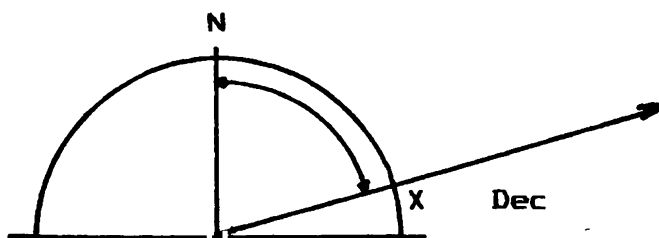


Fig. 43. CO DECLINATION

Notice that the angle formed at the pole between the observer's meridian (of which Co Latitude is a part) and the meridian on which Co Declination is located, is measured westward from the observer's meridian, and is called the LHA (Local Hour Angle) with which we are now familiar.

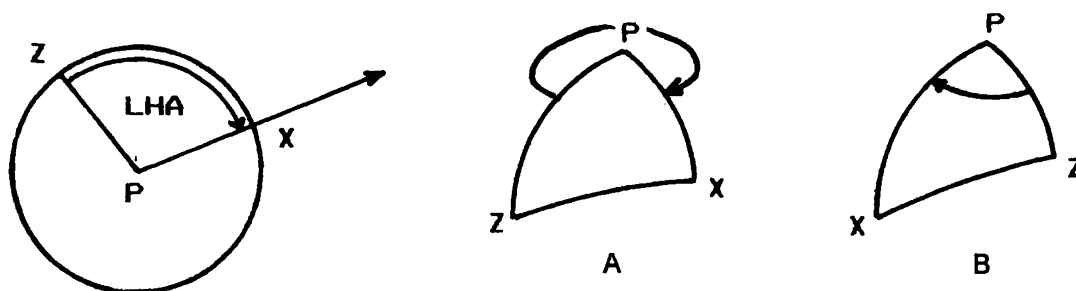


Fig. 44. THE LHA; A. GP EAST OF OBSERVER. B. GP WEST OF OBSERVER.

The angle formed at the observer, Z, between the Co Latitude (on the observer's meridian) and the Co Altitude (the great circle arc/line from the observer to the celestial body's GP) is called the Azimuth Angle; this angle is also called Z. Since it is one of the three angles of a triangle whose angles total  $180^\circ$ , the Azimuth Angle, Z, is always less than  $180^\circ$ .

The angle formed at 'X', the GP of the celestial body, plays no part in the solution of the navigation triangle so we can ignore it from now on.

In deciding which pole to use, we use the pole in the hemisphere in which the GP of the celestial body is located - regardless of which hemisphere the observer is located in. If the observer and the GP are both in the northern or both in the southern hemisphere, they are called 'SAME'. If they are in different hemispheres they are called 'CONTRARY'. Look at the permutations in the following diagrams:

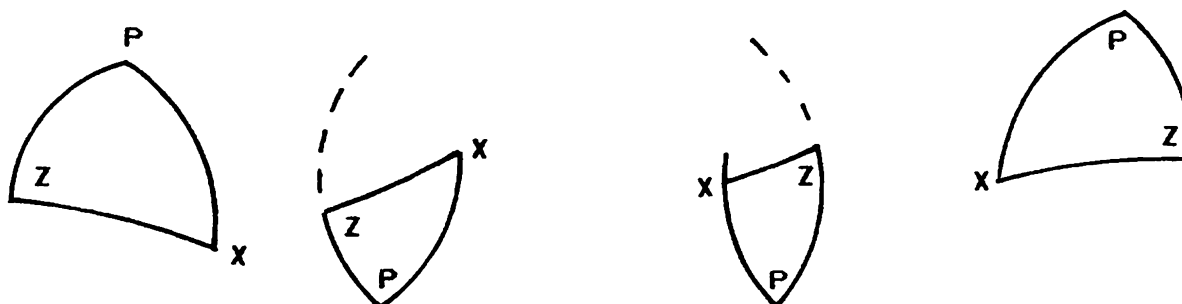


Fig. 45. AZIMUTH ANGLES - THE VARIATIONS

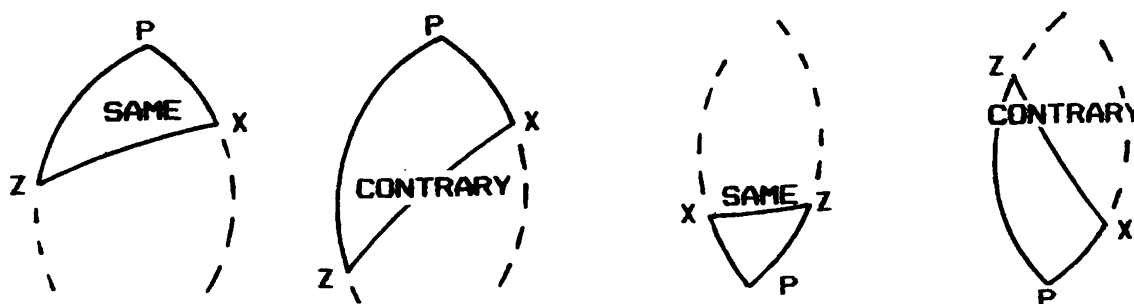


Fig. 46. 'SAME' AND 'CONTRARY' SITUATIONS

The LHA is always measured at a pole, from the observer's meridian westward, to the meridian on which the celestial body's GP is located.

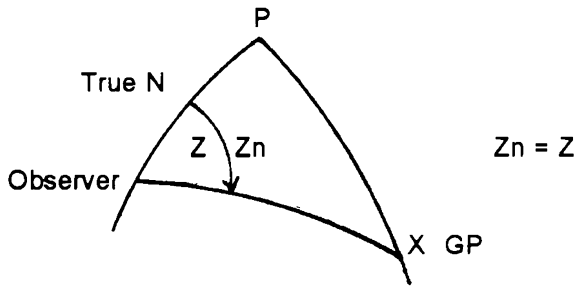


Fig. 47. GP AND POLE 'NORTH'; GP EAST OF OBSERVER;  $Z_n = Z$

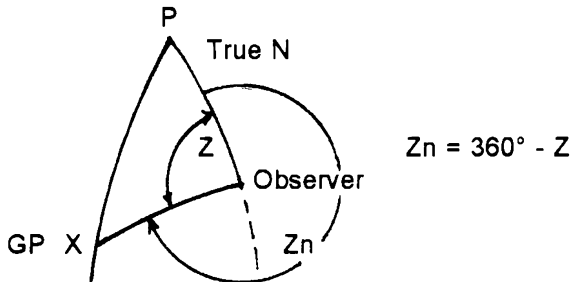


Fig. 48. GP AND POLE 'NORTH'; GP WEST OF OBSERVER;  $Z_n = 360^\circ - Z$

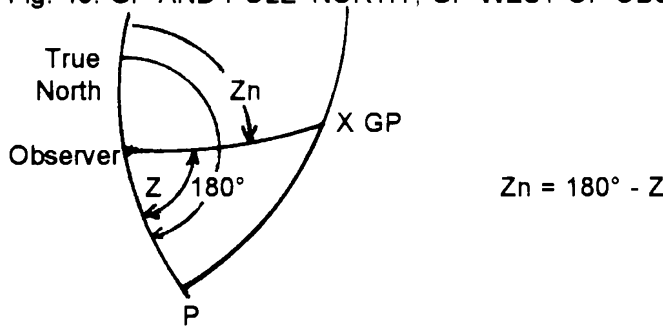


Fig. 49. GP AND POLE 'SOUTH', GP EAST OF OBSERVER;  $Z_n = 180^\circ - Z$

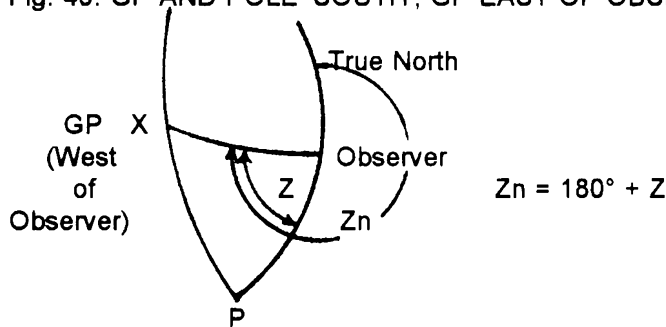


Fig. 50. GP AND POLE 'SOUTH'; GP WEST OF OBSERVER;  $Z_n = 180^\circ + Z$

These relationships between  $Z$  and  $Z_n$  are important as they apply in every method we use (except the Meridian Passage sight) to resolve sight details into plotting information. If we are using Sight Reduction Tables, the tables remind us on each page of what the  $Z/Z_n$  relationship is. If we are using the 'Sine/Cosine' method to solve for elements of the Navigation Triangle, we can use a work sheet which will remind us of the relationship - how to get  $Z_n$  from  $Z$ . If we have no work sheet we must be able to remember and re-draw the above four diagrams so that we can see for ourselves how to get  $Z_n$ .

Before we can start to think of the trigonometry of calculating  $Z$  and  $H_c$ , we need to recall how we get LHA. We need to know its exact value, just as we have to find the exact value for 'Dec' (Declination - see the bottom of page 16 and pages 18 and 19). Rather like finding LHA for Sight Reduction Tables methods, we begin by finding the GHA at the exact second that our sight took place. (See pages 30 to 32.) We then apply our DR longitude to get the LHA. Let's assume our GHA is found to be  $234^\circ 56'$  and we apply a DR longitude of  $43^\circ 21'$  (East -solid line, West -dotted line):



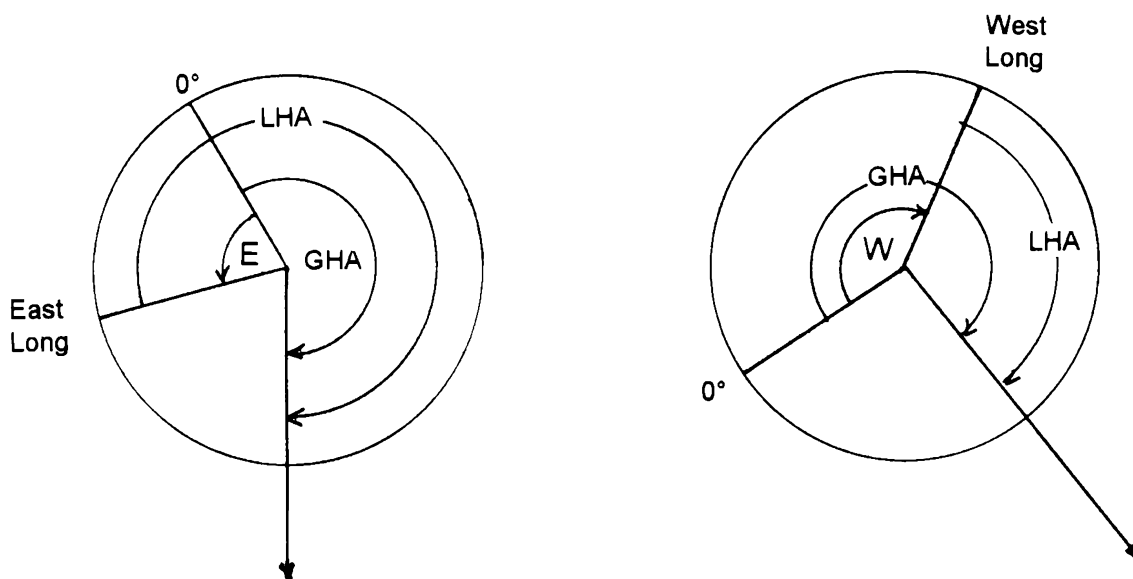


Fig. 51. LHA FROM GHA AND LONGITUDE

The resulting LHA can be any value from 000° to 360°. If, after adding East Longitude, or subtracting West Longitude, the LHA is more than 360° or a negative number (angle), we must subtract or add 360° respectively.

### THE 'SINE/COSINE' METHOD

Having found the value of LHA and the Dec, we are able to use a formula to calculate the value of Hc. This obviates the need for Sight Reduction Tables and the need for Chosen Latitude/Chosen Longitude. It is:

$$Hc = \text{Sine}^{-1} \{ [\text{sine}(\text{Lat}) \times \text{sine}(\text{Dec})] + [\text{cosine}(\text{Lat}) \times \text{cosine}(\text{Dec}) \times \text{cosine}(\text{LHA})] \}$$

Where:

{ } is a number less than 1.

( ) is an angle.

Lat is the DR's Latitude. Lat is positive if North; it is negative if South.

Dec is the declination of the celestial body. It is positive if North and negative if South.

Once we have calculated our Hc, we use its value to calculate 'Zn' :

$$\text{If LHA} > 180^\circ, \text{Zn} = \text{cos}^{-1} X; \text{ if LHA} < 180^\circ, \text{Zn} = 360^\circ - \text{cos}^{-1} X$$

$$\text{and } X = \frac{[\text{sin}(\text{Dec}) \times \text{cos}(\text{Lat})] - [\text{cos}(\text{Dec}) \times \text{cos}(\text{LHA}) \times \text{sin}(\text{Lat})]}{\text{cos}(Hc)}$$

Where:

X is a number less than or equal to 1. If  $X > +1$ , make  $X = +1$ ; if  $X < -1$ , make  $X = -1$ .

( ) is an angle.

Lat is the DR latitude.

Dec is the declination of the celestial body. It is positive if North and negative if South.

Hc is the altitude of the celestial body as per calculation based on the DR position, NOT an AP/CP (Assumed or Chosen Position).

As with any other sight, we must convert the sextant angle to a True Altitude (Ho) and this can now be compared to the Hc obtained by the above calculation to get the intercept (and 'Towards or Away'). We can also calculate our 'Zn', and as this method does not use an AP/CP but is based on the DR position, we can plot the Azimuth and then the LOP from the DR.

Note that when using this method to check any other method, the magnitude of the intercept will be different and one may be 'Towards' while the other is 'Away' because one method uses the DR and the others an AP/CP. For the method to be meaningful as a check, use the AP/CP from other methods as the DR when using the Sine/Cosine method. The intercept answers should then be the same (or VERY nearly so).

Let's now see a work sheet for use with this method, and then actually do an example calculation. The example is the same one we did on page 46 (Solution 9) using the information given at the bottom of page 40 (Example 9). We will make one change for comparison purposes, and use the AP/CP from this data as the DR in the method we are about to use. Then the resulting Intercept information should be the same.

Page 55 shows a work sheet (Work Sheet 4) for use with the Sine/Cosine method.

Page 56 shows the example referred to above (Example 9) applied to a work sheet. Page 57 shows the Hc and Zn calculations. Compare the two methods' answers. The Azimuth, Zn, and Intercept will be the same, because we made the DR the same as the 'Assumed' or 'Chosen Position', the AP/CP. In other cases Zn may differ by up to  $1^\circ$ , but the intercepts will nearly always be different. This is because the intercept is calculated/ruled/measured from different places - the Sight Reduction Tables use the AP/CP, whereas the Sine/Cosine method uses the DR. When we plot the resulting lines of position, they will, however, be in the same place.)

Here are some more examples to try. See the Solutions section in Part 2 to check your answers.

Determine the values of Hc and Zn:

**EXAMPLE 15**

31 August 199x, DR  $15^\circ 26,5'$  N,  $130^\circ 14,8'$  W. Clock time of sight 18h38m53s; clock 41 seconds fast.

**EXAMPLE 16**

5 December 199x, DR  $10^\circ 14,2'$  S,  $80^\circ 35'$  E. Clock time of sight 05h22m16s; clock 28 seconds slow.

**EXAMPLE 17**

20 June 199x, DR  $30^\circ 18,5'$  S,  $8^\circ 42'$  E. Clock time of sight 09h07m48s; clock 9 seconds fast.

**EXAMPLE 18**

28 February 199x, DR  $38^\circ 51'$  N,  $26^\circ 28'$  W. Clock time of sight 11h52m37s; clock 15 seconds fast.

**EXAMPLE 19**

5 December 199x, DR  $30^\circ 47'$  S,  $165^\circ 20'$  E. Clock time of sight 00h38m01s; clock 44 seconds slow.

**WORK SHEET FOR SINE/COSINE METHOD OF SIGHT RESOLUTION**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date:	DR	°	'N/S,	°	'E/W, IE	, 'on/'off	Ht of eye:	ft/m,	Course	°T/M/C,
Speed	knots,		Celestial Body				(LL/UL). Clock error* to UTC:	h	m	s
(*fast,+slow).Clock time of sight	h	m	s.	Time of sight corrected to UTC/GMT	h	m	s			
<b>TA/Ho</b>				→ App Alt (AA)						° , '
SA (Hs) as read from sextant, incl any error.			° , '	↑ Main Corr (Almanac card; For Moon, see back of book)+/-						° , '
IE from sextant '-ON', '+OFF'	+/-		, '	Planet Corr (Al'nac card)		+				° , '
DIP (Eye, Almanac card, right side)-			, '	HP Moon Corr Back of Almanac		+				° , '
App Alt (AA)	=		° , '→	↑ UL Moon		-30'				, '
				<b>TA/Ho</b>		=				° , '
<b>DECLINATION</b>										
Dec as at hour of sight, Almanac date page, right, under SUN. Increasing? Y/N										N/S ° , '
d factor, bottom of Dec column; For use with Yellow pages, mins (time) of sight										( d = )
d Corr; Yellow pages 'mins', under 'd or v', opposite is Corr. (+ if Dec incr'sing)										+/- , '
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b> as at time of sight =										N/S ° , '
<b>GHA</b>										
GHA of body; Aries if a star:as at day, hr.										° , '
Al'nac, date page, under applic body.										
Incremenet for minutes and seconds +										° , '
Yellow pages, mins, opp secs.										
v factor : ..... Date page; to find corrn 'Corrn' as for d factor of Dec +/-										, '
+ Moon (v, one of its 5 columns), +/- Planets (bottom of column)										
GHA of celestial body sighted, or Aries =										° , '
Sum of above lines.										
SHA of star (".....") if applic +										° , '
Almanac, date page left side.										
GHA of celestial body sighted =										° , '
Sum of above two lines.										
- 360° if GHA above is greater than 360° -										° , '
An angle cannot be more than 360°!										
<b>GHA Required</b> =										° , '
DR Longitude (+ if East, - if West) +/-										° , '
To get the angle from our DR's meridian to the meridian of the GP.										
LHA of celestial body sighted =										° , '
LHA to be between 0° and 360°										
+/- 360° if necessary +/-										° , '
<b>LHA Required</b> =										° , '
For use in the formula below.										
<b>Hc:</b>										
$Hc = \sin^{-1}\{\sin Lat^{**} \times \sin Dec^{**} + \cos Lat^{**} \times \cos Dec^{**} \times \cos LHA\} =$ , ° = _____ ° , '										
Where 'Lat' is Latitude, 'Dec' is Declination. **They are positive if North, negative if South.										
<b>Zn:</b> If LHA > 180°, Zn = $\cos^{-1} X$ ; If LHA < 180°, Zn = $360^\circ - \cos^{-1} X$ . (Zn taken to nearest degree.)										
Where $X = \{(\sin Dec^{**} \times \cos Lat^{**}) - (\cos Dec^{**} \times \cos LHA \times \sin Lat^{**})\} \div \cos Hc$ .										
But X must be between -1 and +1; if X > +1, make X = +1; if X < -1, make X = -1. So Zn = _____ ° T										
<b>Intercept:</b>										
Ho ° , ' Hc Subtract smaller from larger.										
-Hc ° , ' -Ho										
Intercept = _____ ' TOWARDS or AWAY (If Ho is greater than Hc, "TOWARDS".)										

Solution 9 (Sine). Compare with the solution on page 46 using the Air Sight Reduction Pages method.

**WORK SHEET FOR SINE/COSINE METHOD OF SIGHT RESOLUTION**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: <u>28/2</u> DR <u>38° N</u> , <u>26° 38.8' W</u> , IE <u>3.0'</u> 'on'/'off' Ht of eye: <u>3.5</u> m, Course <u>280° T</u> <u>MC</u> , Speed <u>7</u> knots, Celestial Body <u>Sun</u> (LL/UT). Clock error* to UTC: h <u>—</u> m <u>16</u> s (*-fast, +slow). Clock time of sight <u>12 h 07 m 26 s</u> . Time of sight corrected to UTC/GMT <u>12 h 07 m 10 s</u>			
<b>TA/Ho</b>		→ App Alt (AA)	<u>37° 16.4'</u>
SA (Hs) as read from sextant, incl any error.	<u>37° 22.6'</u>	↑ Main Corrn (Almanac card; For Moon, see back of book)+/-	<u>+° 15.0'</u>
IE from sextant '-ON', '+OFF' +/-	<u>- 3.0'</u>	Planet Corrn (Al'nac card) +	<u>° , '</u>
DIP (Eye, Almanac card, right side)-	<u>- 3.2'</u>	HP Moon Corrn Back of Almanac +	<u>° , '</u>
App Alt (AA) =	<u>37° 16.4' →</u>	↑ UL Moon -30'	<u>, '</u>
		<b>TA/Ho</b> =	<u>37° 31.4'</u>
<b>DECLINATION</b>			
Dec as at hour of sight, Almanac date page, right, under SUN. Increasing? Y/N			<u>N/S 7° 56.6'</u>
d factor, bottom of Dec column; For use with Yellow pages, mins (time) of sight			<u>(d = 0.9)</u>
d Corrn; Yellow pages 'mins', under 'd or v', opposite is Corrn. (+ if Dec incr'sing)			<u>#/- - 0.1'</u>
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b> as at time of sight =			<u>N/S 7° 56.5'</u>
<b>GHA</b>			
GHA of body; Aries if a star: as at day, hr.	<u>356° 51.3'</u>	Al'nac, date page, under applic body.	
Incremenet for minutes and seconds +	<u>1° 47.5'</u>	Yellow pages, mins, opp secs.	
v factor : ..... Date page; to find corrn 'Corrn' as for d factor of Dec +/-	<u>, '</u>	+ Moon (v, one of its 5 columns), +/- Planets (bottom of column)	
GHA of celestial body sighted, or Aries =	<u>358° 38.8'</u>	Sum of above lines.	
SHA of star (".....") if applic +	<u>° , '</u>	Almanac, date page left side.	
GHA of celestial body sighted =	<u>° , '</u>	Sum of above two lines.	
- 360° if GHA above is greater than 360° -	<u>° , '</u>	An angle cannot be more than 360°!	
<b>GHA Required</b> =	<u>358° 38.8'</u>		
DR Longitude (+ if East, - if West) +/-	<u>26° 38.8'</u>	To get the angle from our DR's meridian to the meridian of the GP.	
LHA of celestial body sighted =	<u>332° 00.0'</u>		
+/- 360° if necessary +/-	<u>° , '</u>	LHA to be between 0° and 360°	
<b>LHA Required</b> =	<u>332° 00.0'</u>	For use in the formula below.	
<b>Hc:</b>			
$Hc = \sin^{-1}\{\sin Lat^{**} \times \sin Dec^{**} + \cos Lat^{**} \times \cos Dec^{**} \times \cos LHA\} = 37.159^\circ = \underline{37^\circ 09.6'}$ Where 'Lat' is Latitude, 'Dec' is Declination. **They are positive if North, negative if South.			
<b>Zn:</b> If LHA > 180°, Zn = $\cos^{-1} X$ ; If LHA < 180°, Zn = $360^\circ - \cos^{-1} X$ . (Zn taken to nearest degree.)			
Where $X = \{(\sin Dec^{**} \times \cos Lat^{**}) - (\cos Dec^{**} \times \cos LHA \times \sin Lat^{**})\} \div \cos Hc$ . But X must be between -1 and +1; if X > +1, make X = +1; if X < -1, make X = -1. So <u>Zn = 144° T</u>			
<b>Intercept:</b> Ho <u>37° 31.4'</u> Hc Subtract smaller from larger. -Hc <u>37° 09.6'</u> -Ho Intercept = <u>21.8'</u> TOWARDS or AWAY (If Ho is greater than Hc, "TOWARDS".)			

Solution 9 (Sine) from Example 9, page 40. Compare with Solution 9, page 46.

Let's examine the step-by-step calculations of both Hc and Z.

(Lat and Dec are both North and are therefore positive.)

$$\begin{aligned}
 Hc &= \text{Sin}^{-1} \{ [\text{Sin (Lat)} \times \text{sin (Dec)}] + [\text{Cosine (Lat)} \times \text{cosine (Dec)} \times \text{cosine (LHA)}] \} \\
 &= \text{Sin}^{-1} \{ [\text{Sin } 38^\circ \times \text{sin } 7^\circ 56,5'] + [\text{cos } 38^\circ \times \text{cos } 7^\circ 56,5' \times \text{cos } 332^\circ] \} \\
 &= \text{Sin}^{-1} \{ [\text{Sin } 38^\circ \times \text{sin } 7,94166^\circ] + [\text{cos } 38^\circ \times \text{cos } 7,94166^\circ \times \text{cos } 332^\circ] \} \\
 &= \text{Sin}^{-1} \{ 0,61566 \times -0,13816 + 0,78801 \times 0,99041 \times 0,88295 \} \\
 &= \text{Sin}^{-1} \{ -0,08506 + 0,68910 \} \\
 &= \text{Sin}^{-1} \{ 0,60404 \} \\
 &= 37,1597^\circ \\
 &= \underline{37^\circ 09,6'}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 X &= \frac{\{ \text{sin Dec} \times \text{cos Lat} \} - \{ \text{cos Dec} \times \text{cos LHA} \times \text{sin Lat} \}}{\text{Cos(Hc)}} \\
 &= \frac{(\text{sin } 7^\circ 56,5' \times \text{cos } 38^\circ 00') - (\text{cos } 7^\circ 56,5' \times \text{cos } 332^\circ 00' \times \text{sin } 38^\circ 00')}{\text{cos } 37^\circ 09,6'} \\
 &= \frac{(\text{sin } 7,94166^\circ \times \text{cos } 38,0^\circ) - (\text{cos } 7,94166^\circ \times \text{cos } 332,0^\circ \times \text{sin } 38,0^\circ)}{\text{cos } 37,1597^\circ} \\
 &= \frac{(-0,13816 \times 0,78801) - (0,99040 \times 0,61566 \times 0,88295)}{0,79695} \\
 &= \frac{(-0,10887) - (0,53838)}{0,79695} \\
 &= \frac{-0,64725}{0,79695} \\
 &= -0,80902
 \end{aligned}$$

But  $Z_n = \cos^{-1} X$  (The LHA is greater than  $180^\circ$ .)

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{So our } Z_n &= \cos^{-1} x - 0,80902 \\
 &= 144,30739^\circ \\
 &= \underline{144^\circ T} \text{ to the nearest whole degree.}
 \end{aligned}$$

NOTES

## PLOTTING LINES OF POSITION: POSITION FIXING

### Introduction

Except in the case of the Meridian Passage sight, all the sight details we have looked at so far, and those for the moon, stars and planets, result in an AP/CP (an Assumed or Chosen Position - latitude and longitude), an Intercept, and whether the intercept is 'Towards' or 'Away' an Azimuth (direction).

If this information is to be of any significance, we need to be able to use it to establish a Line of Position (LOP) - a line on which we were located at the time the sight was taken. If we can get two LOPs from two separate sightings which cross, we can establish where on those lines we were at the time of either sight, regardless of the time interval and any movement between the taking of the two sights (so long as the amount of movement is known). As there will be a small degree of inaccuracy due to the sextant user's skill and the 'rounding off' in the tables, it is better whenever possible to take three sights in different directions resulting in three LOPs. This is achieved by sighting the moon and two stars or three stars and/or planets in quick succession, or by taking three sights of the sun (and/or moon when visible by day) at different times during the day. Each sight results in a LOP and the three will, due to the inaccuracies, result in a triangle being formed when each is plotted. The smaller the triangle, the more accurate the fix.

The triangle obtained from three LOPs is sometimes called the Triangle of Uncertainty, but is more popularly known as a 'Cocked Hat'. The position 'fix' is taken as the geometric centre of the triangle.

### PLOTTING

Charts used for transoceanic voyages are usually of a scale which is too small (the degrees of latitude and longitude are too close together) for plotting purposes. Plotting sheets are therefore used which have a more suitable scale and the added advantages of keeping all the irrelevant plotting lines (Azimuths, lines of position, course line, advanced/ transferred lines of position) off the chart in use, and allowing one to keep/file the plotting with the work sheet.

The world we know is round but our charts and plotting sheets are flat, rectangular pieces of paper representing areas on the earth's curved surface. To overcome distortion inaccuracies we use the Mercator Projection method of chart production which uses a fixed scale for longitude and a varying scale for latitude -



Fig. 52. LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE

The further one is away from the equator the greater the vertical scale length. Because the scale is expanded the further one moves from the equator, distances can only be accurately measured on the expanded scale, which we can see is the side vertical (latitude) scale.

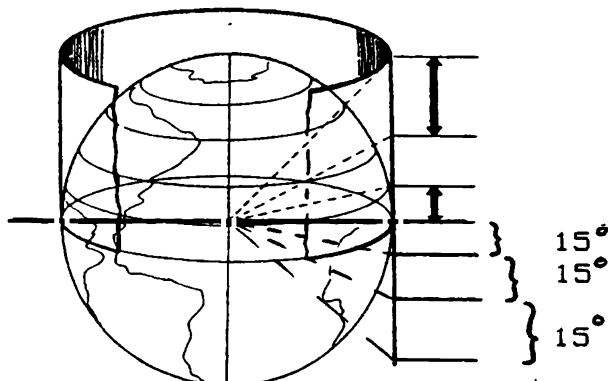


Fig. 53. MERCATOR PROJECTION

Some plotting sheet makers change the variable scale to the horizontal axis keeping a fixed constant scale on the vertical axis. As long as the ratio of the lengths of the vertical and horizontal sides are in proportion for the latitude concerned, it does not matter which of the sides' scales was expanded - as long as we know the scale in use. This scale will always be a factor of latitude.

Look back at Figures 26 to 31 on pages 27 to 29 and re-read the notes relevant to those illustrations.

Now look at an unused plotting sheet of the type that we will use. One appears on the next page as Plotting Sheet 1. Note that a graduated scale has been printed on the centre vertical line and that it represents the 60' of a degree of latitude between each of the horizontal lines. The horizontal lines do not have any scale printed on them so as not to confuse the navigator when translating the 'fix' into the required Latitude and Longitude - the Longitude scale is then taken from the scale graph.

The scale graph for measuring the longitude, depending on latitude, is found at the bottom right-hand corner of the plotting sheet. To use this scale graph we rule a horizontal line through the graph at a level corresponding to our chosen latitude - see the latitudes marked from 0° to 70° at the right of the graph. The length of the line ruled, from the left curved line (50') intersection, to the right-hand vertical line (10') represents 60' or 60 miles. If our CP Lat was 34°S, we would rule our scale line at the 34° level (as near as we can judge). The CP's longitude and the fix longitude's minutes are then measured on this line using dividers (e.g. 25').

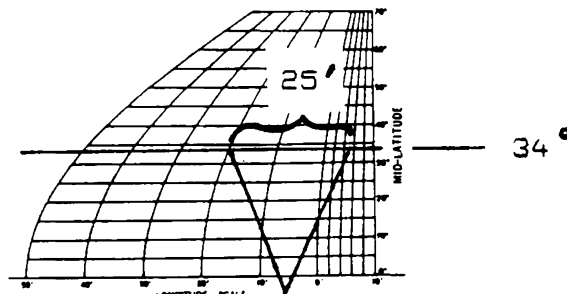


Fig. 54. PLOTTING SHEET SCALE FROM THE SCALE GRAPH

The best way to see how we go about the plotting process is to follow the step-by-step procedure. So, let's plot the LOP resulting from a sight calculation example, Example 8's Solution 8 on page 39. The relevant information was:

Date 5 December 199x, Chosen Latitude 15°N, Chosen Longitude 26°53,9' W, Intercept 8,0' AWAY, Azimuth 137°T.

We go to the plotting sheet and begin by labelling the Chosen Latitude at either or both ends of the centre horizontal line. Next we label the vertical line a whole number of degrees nearest to our Chosen Longitude - see Plotting Sheet 2. on page 62.

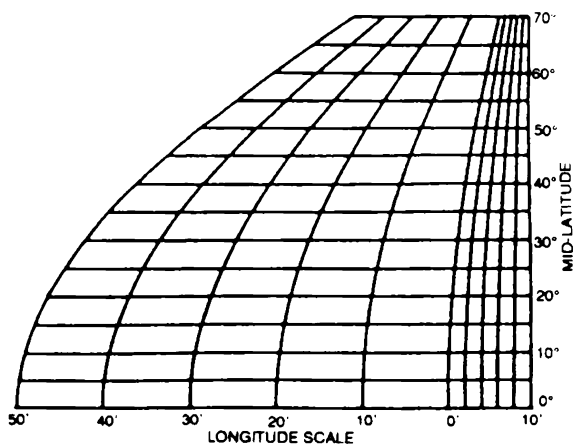
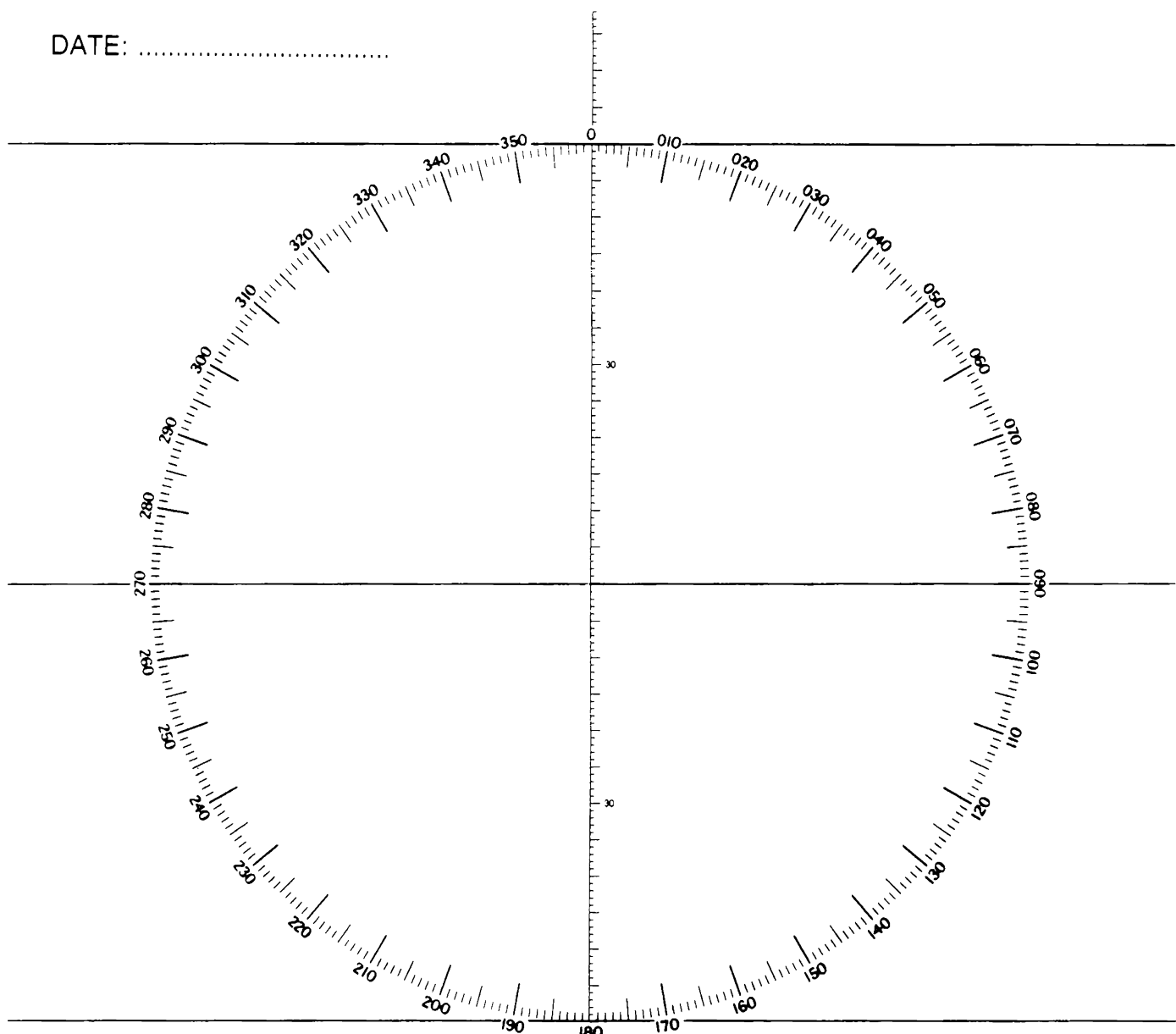
Now rule a horizontal line through the scale graph, bottom right, at 15° Latitude. We take our dividers and measure 53,9' (the minutes of our Chosen Longitude) on the horizontal line in the graph, then mark off that distance along the centre horizontal line (our CP Lat line), from the centre of the circle to the left if longitude 'West', or to the right if longitude 'East'. This mark represents our Chosen Position (the CP). See Plotting Sheet 3, page 63.

Now take a parallel rule or plotter and set it so one edge passes through the chosen position while at an angle/direction of our Azimuth, Zn, i.e. 137° to the right/clockwise from the vertical - the direction 137° can be established using the graduated ring. We now rule a line along this edge in the direction from the chosen position AWAY from 137° - in the direction 317° (137° + 180°). Rule it slightly longer than the intercept (8,0 miles) line when drawn to scale. See Plotting Sheet 4, page 64.



# A PLOTTING SHEET

DATE: .....



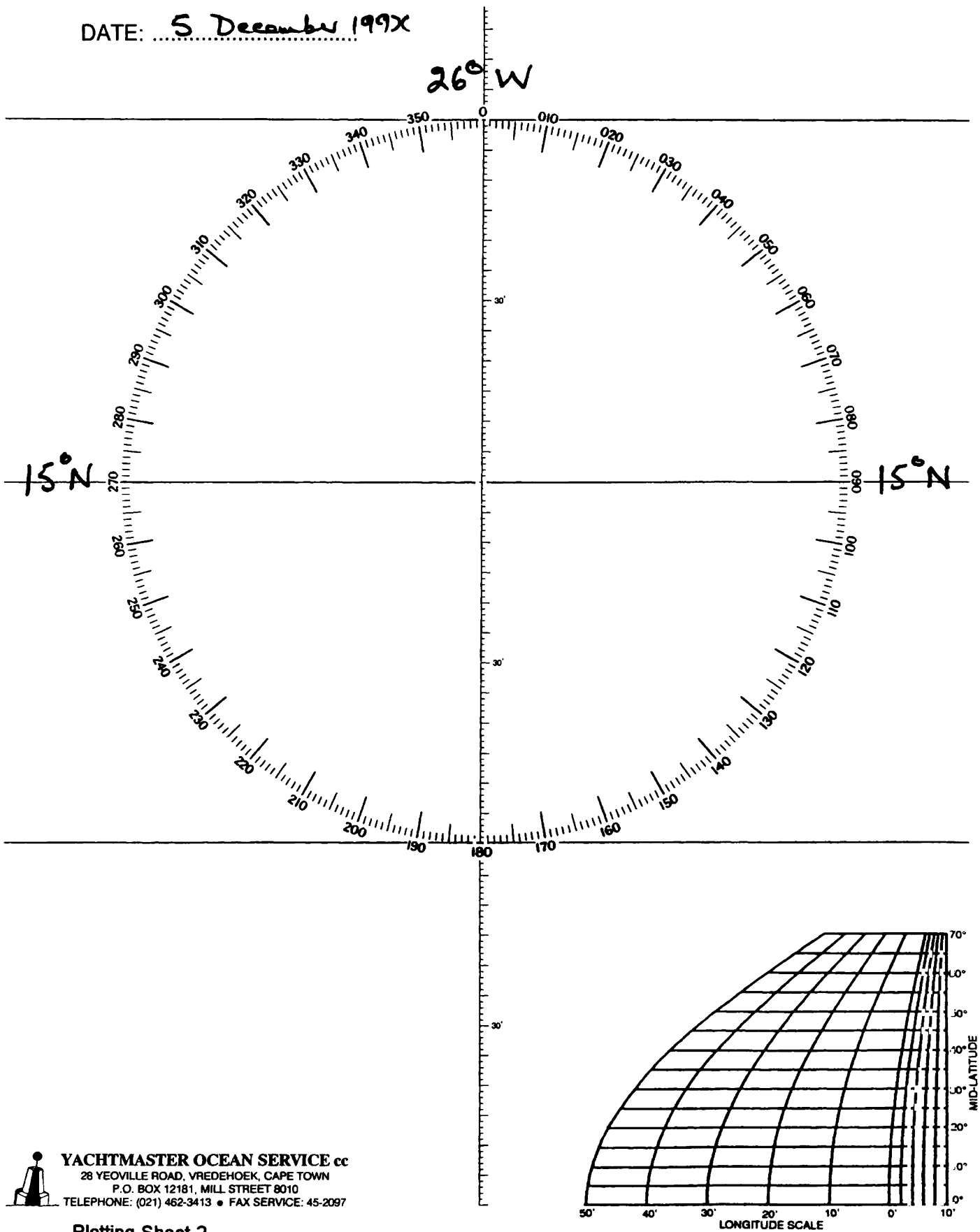
**YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

Plotting Sheet 1.

**"Yachtmaster's" courses never end - free extra help until you pass your test.**

**LATITUDE AND LONGITUDES LABELS ADDED**

DATE: 5 December 199X



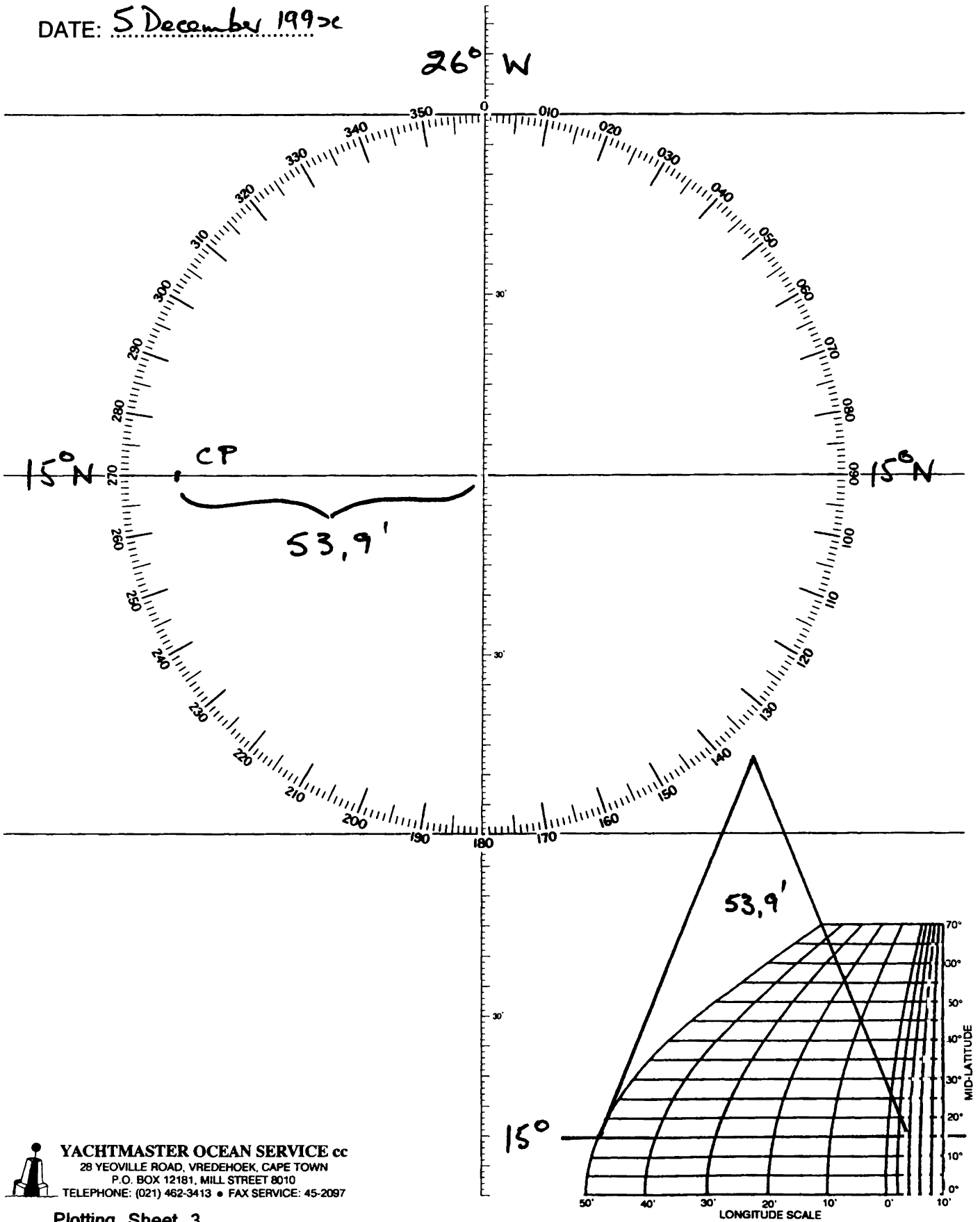
**YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

Plotting Sheet 2.

**Yachtmaster's courses are well prepared and professionally delivered.**

**MARKING THE CHOSEN POSITION**

DATE: 5 December 1992



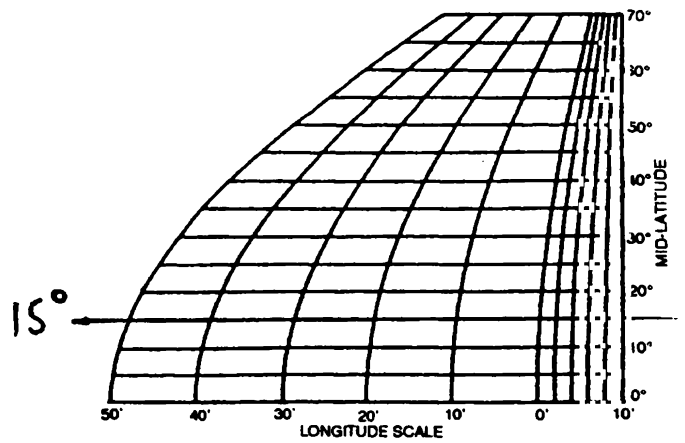
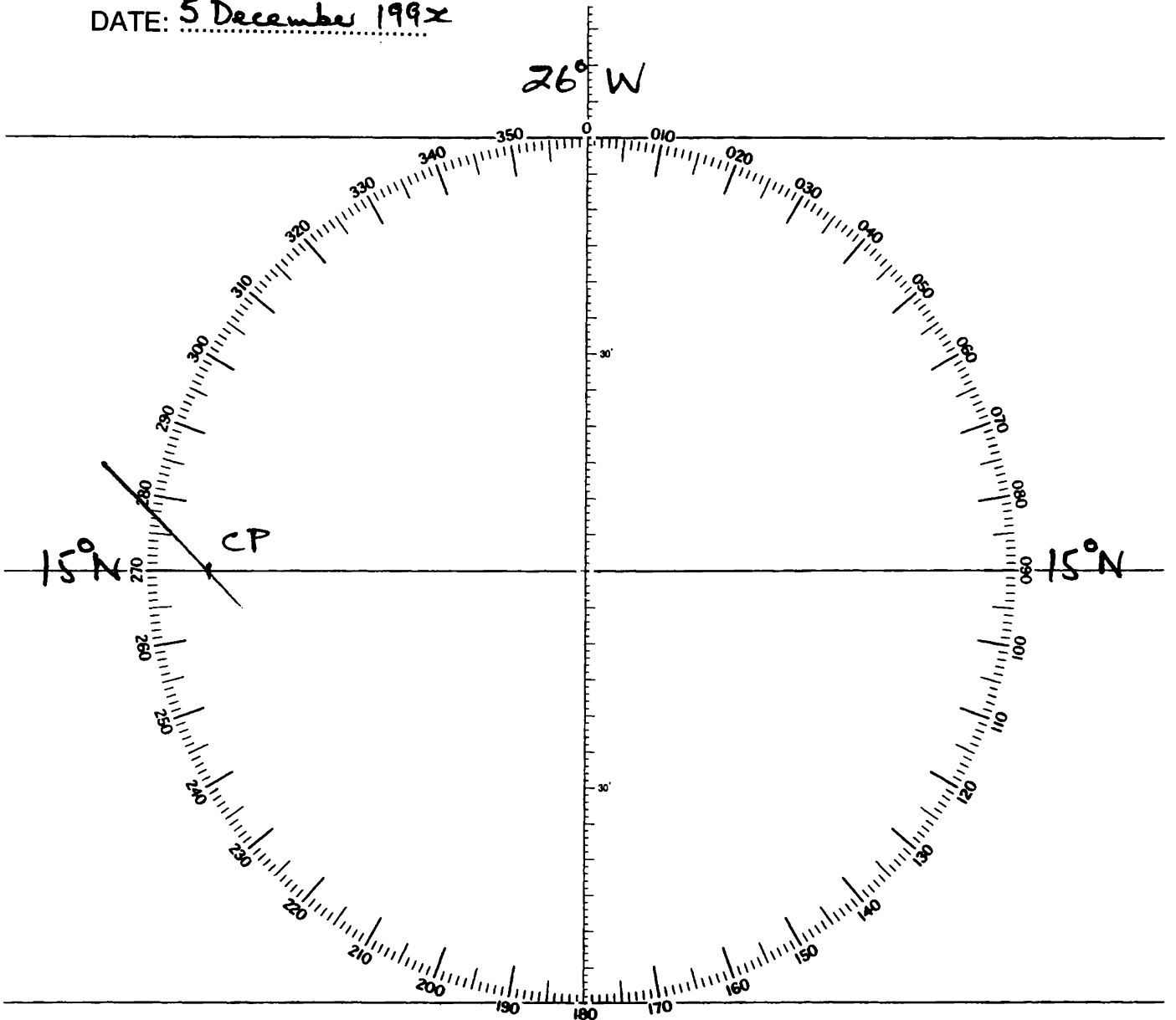
 **YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

Plotting Sheet 3.

**"Yachtmaster's" courses never end - free extra help until you pass your test.**

**MARKING THE AZIMUTH LINE FOR THE INTERCEPT**

DATE: 5 December 199x



**YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

Plotting Sheet 4.

**Yachtmaster's courses are well prepared and professionally delivered.**

Next we measure the intercept length on the vertical scale with the dividers and mark off its length from the chosen position in the AWAY direction of  $317^\circ$ . See Plotting Sheet 5, page 66. Finally, we construct a line at right angles to the Azimuth line at this AWAY mark. This last line is our LOP. To show it is the LOP we mark it with the navigator's chartwork symbols for 'LOP' by drawing an arrowhead at each end of the LOP. See Plotting Sheet 6, page 67.

Look through the step-by-step sequence of plotting actions from Plotting Sheet 2 to Plotting Sheet 6, then return to this page and continue reading, below.

One LOP is of little use mid-ocean but two intersecting LOPs give us a 'fix'. Just as with LOPs from a hand compass in coastal navigation, the two LOPs may contain a degree of error and a third LOP is desirable. This third LOP will invariably result in a 'cocked hat' triangle due to the slight errors in the individual LOPs. These errors are then minimised by taking the fix position to be the centre of the cocked hat.

In Plotting Sheet 7 on page 68 we show the LOP obtained in the previous example (page 67) when the Azimuth was  $137^\circ$  (the direction to the celestial body). We also show a second plotted LOP, and a fix taken from the intersection of the two LOPs. Read the latitude from the vertical scale. The longitude's 'minutes' is obtained from the scale graph - the horizontal line representing your CP lat through the scale graph. The dividers are set to the longitude distance from the centre vertical line and the longitude minutes are read off on the graph's horizontal line. In our example the Lat is  $15^\circ 36,2' N$  (".2" is an estimation from interpolation), and Long is  $26^\circ 25,0' W$ .

A third LOP (e.g. latitude from a Meridian Passage sight when the Azimuth was  $360^\circ$  - the LOP lies east to west) results in a triangle; we take the fix to be the centre of that triangle. Our example, Plotting Sheet 8 on page 69, shows Lat  $15^\circ 34' N$ , Long  $26^\circ 25' W$ .

The above examples make no allowance for movement of the vessel which is very likely to have been sailing a course and therefore moving at some speed. Since the sights were not taken at the same time they were not taken at the same place. To correct for the movement of the vessel, we must move the earlier LOPS in the direction and by the same amount that the vessel moved in the time between the sights. This is known as 'Transferring' or 'Advancing' LOPs. In Plotting Sheets 9 to 12 on pages 70 to 73 we show LOP 'A' from a sight at 10H00 being 'advanced' to the time of LOP 'B' at 14H30 while the vessel had been sailing a course of  $350^\circ T$  at an average speed of 6 knots. In 4 hours 30 minutes at 6 knots the vessel would have sailed  $6 \times 4,5 = 27$  miles (on course  $350^\circ T$ ). The advanced LOP is reconstructed parallel to the original line as at 10H00, at a distance and in the direction the vessel moved between the taking of the two sights. Assume DR  $18^\circ S, 6^\circ W$ .

If three sights are taken during the day, two (normally the first two) are advanced or transferred to equate in time to the third and a 'cocked hat' results as at the time of the third sight. Our 'fix' position is then the centre of that triangle and is as at the time of the third sight.

The sights calculated on page 39 (Solution 8 to Example 8 on page 35), and Solution 8.b. in the Solutions section in Part 2, are used as an example for plotting. Our plotting is on page 74 as Solution 8 (Plotting). Now try your own plotting (Make and use photocopies of page 61). The answers are in the Solutions section in Part 2, as Solutions 20 to 22.

**EXAMPLE 20.** C Lat  $19^\circ N$ , Course  $270^\circ T$ , Speed 7 knots. Find the fix at 16h01.

Sight 1. C Long  $63^\circ 25' W$ , Zn  $045^\circ$ , Intercept 51' Towards. Time of sight 09h57 LMT.

Sight 2. C Long  $63^\circ 40' W$ , Zn  $350^\circ$ , Intercept 16' Away. Time of sight 13h03 LMT.

Sight 3. C Long  $63^\circ 14' W$ , Zn  $305^\circ$ , Intercept 15' Away. Time of sight 16h01 LMT.

**EXAMPLE 21.**

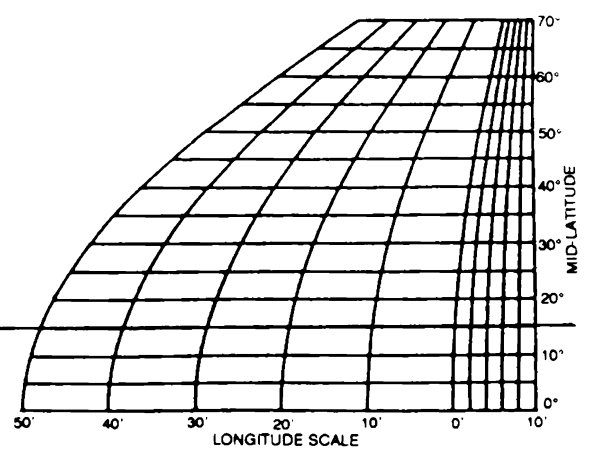
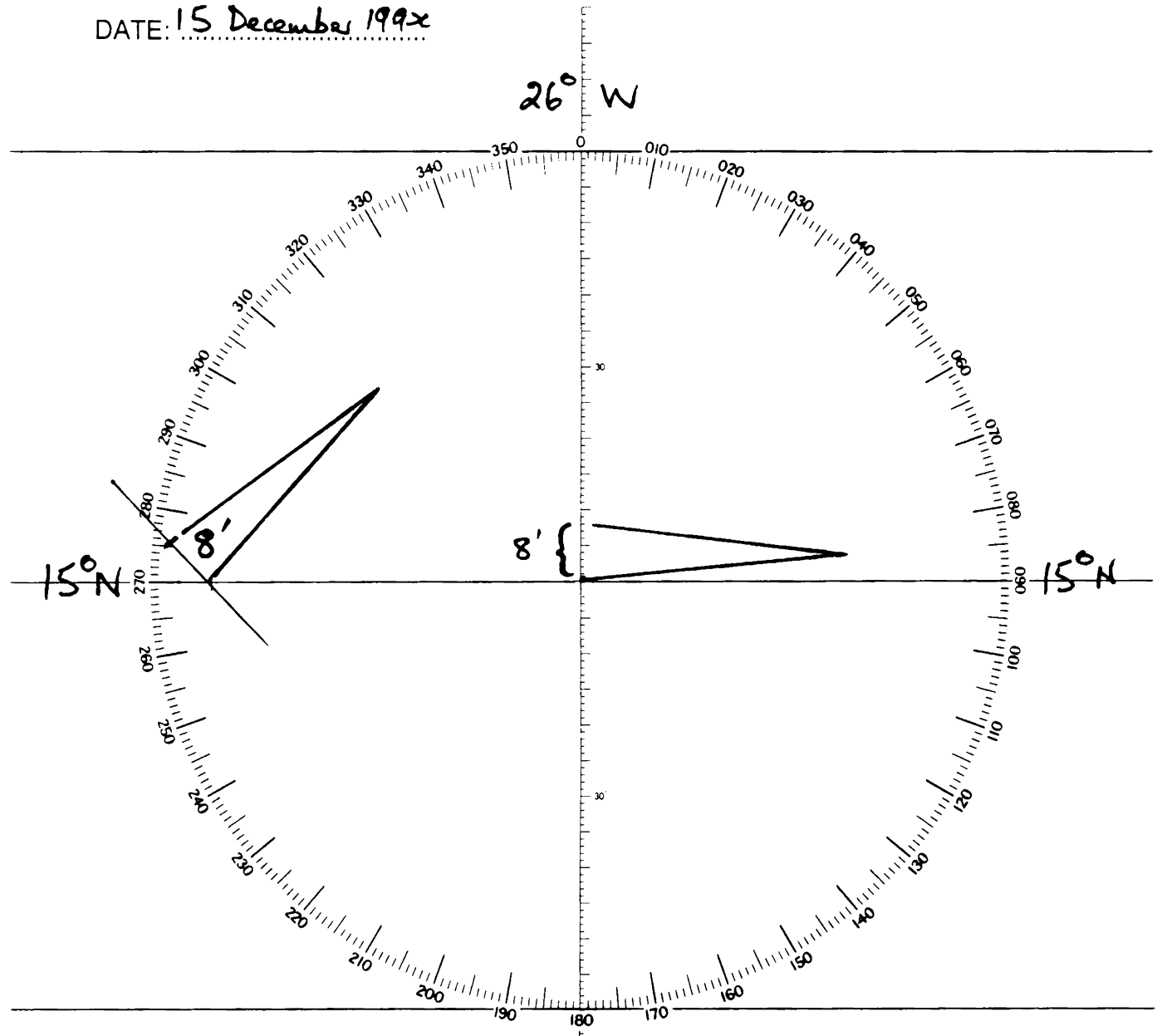
Using the plotting data obtained from Solution 12 in the Solutions section, Part 2, plot the fix of the vessel at the time of the third sight.

**EXAMPLE 22.**

Using the plotting data obtained from Solution 13 in the Solutions section, Part 2, plot the vessel's position as the time of the third sight.

**MARKING THE INTERCEPT**

DATE: 15 December 199x



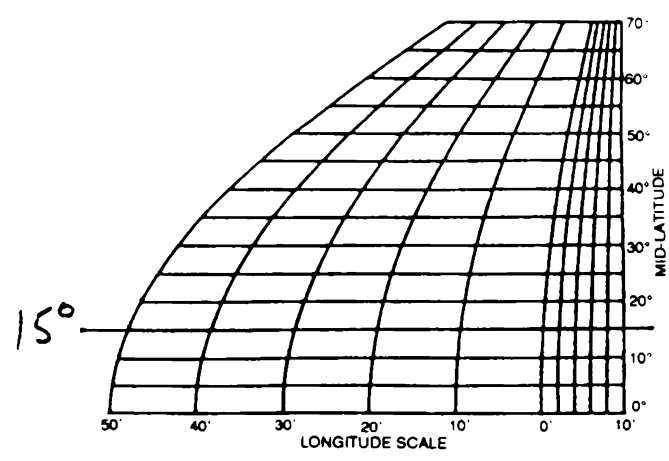
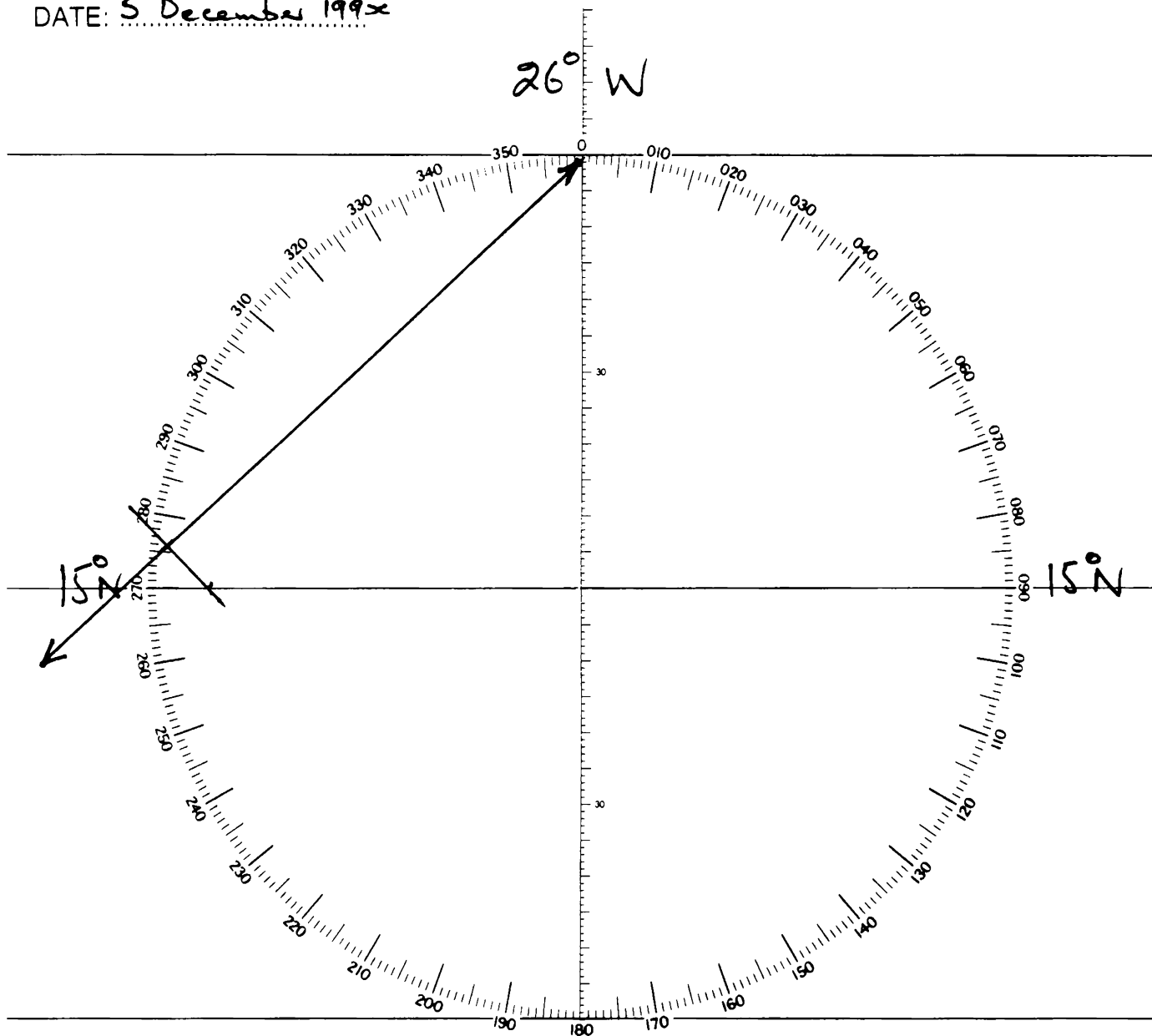
**YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
P O BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
TELEPHONE (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE 45-2097

Plotting Sheet 5. MARKING THE INTERCEPT

**Yachtmaster's courses are well prepared and professionally delivered.**

THE LINE OF POSITION

DATE: 5 December 199x



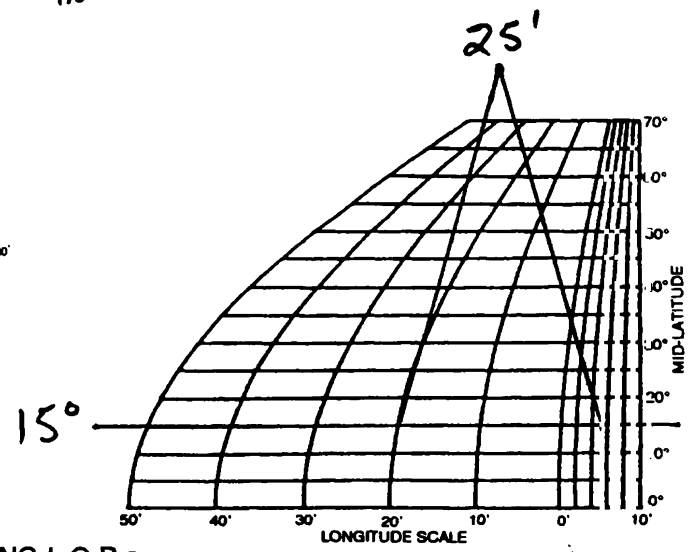
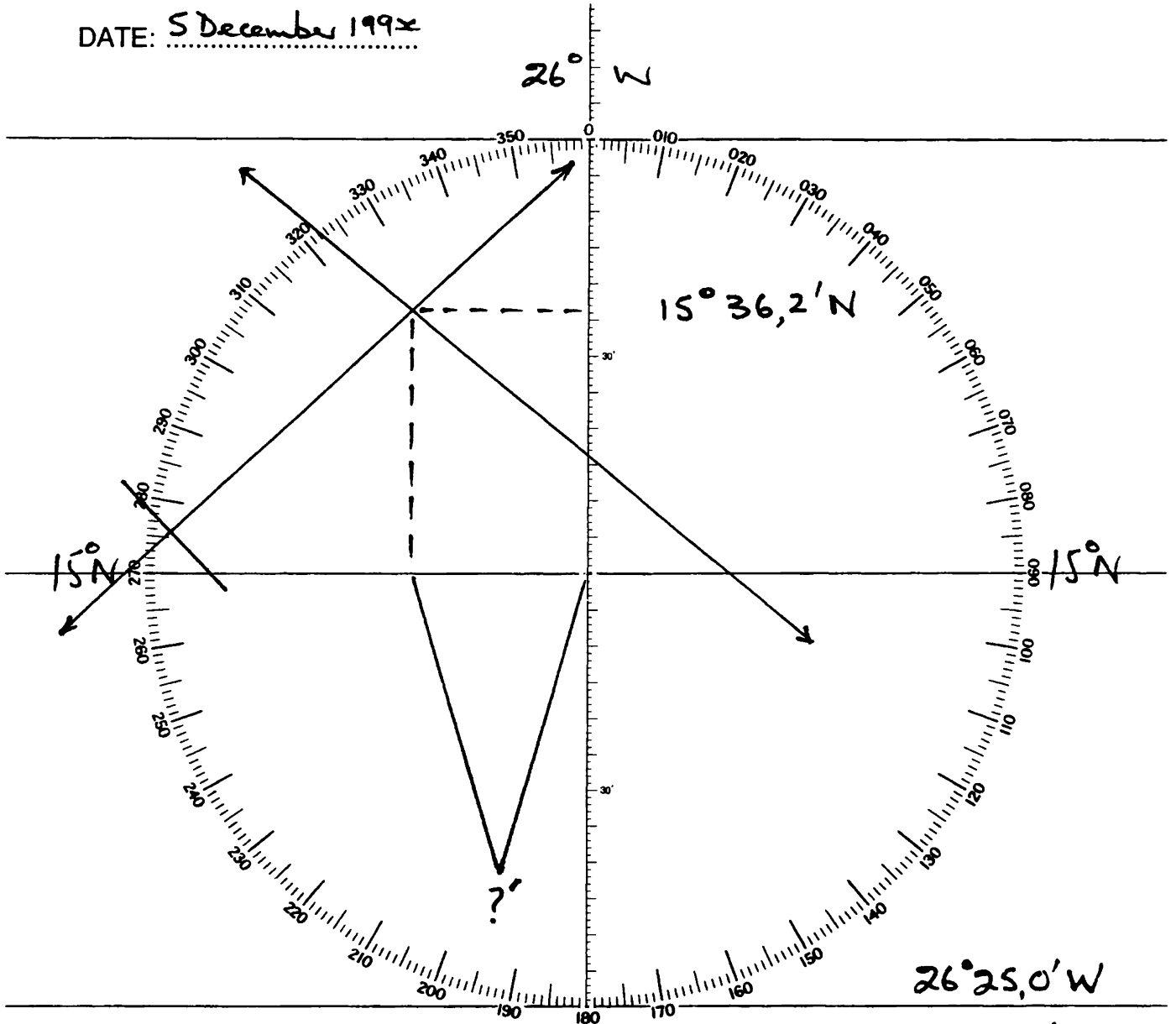
 **YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
P O BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

Plotting Sheet 6. THE LINE OF POSITION.

**"Yachtmaster's" courses never end - free extra help until you pass your test.**

**A TWO L.O.P. FIX POSITION**

DATE: 5 December 1992



 **YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

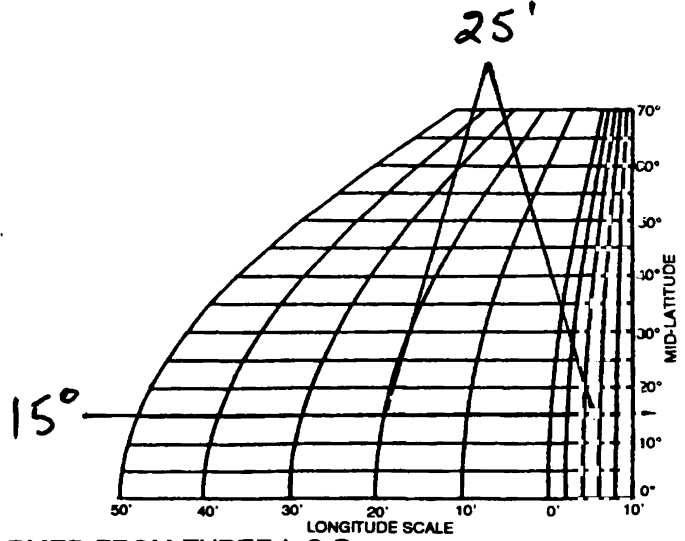
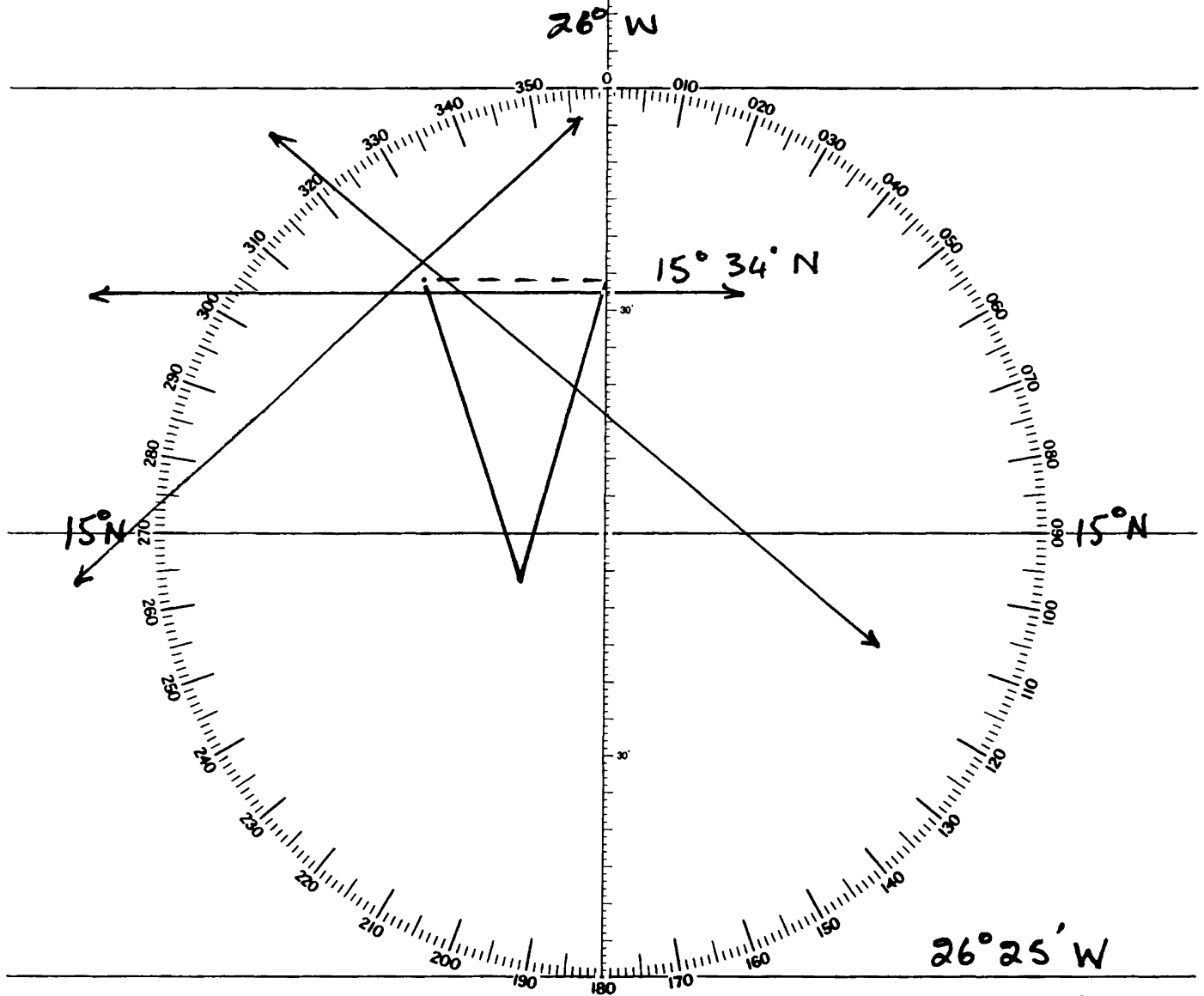
Plotting Sheet 7. A FIX FROM TWO INTERSECTING L.O.P.s

**Yachtmaster's courses are well prepared and professionally delivered.**



A THREE L.O.P. FIX

DATE: 5 December 1992

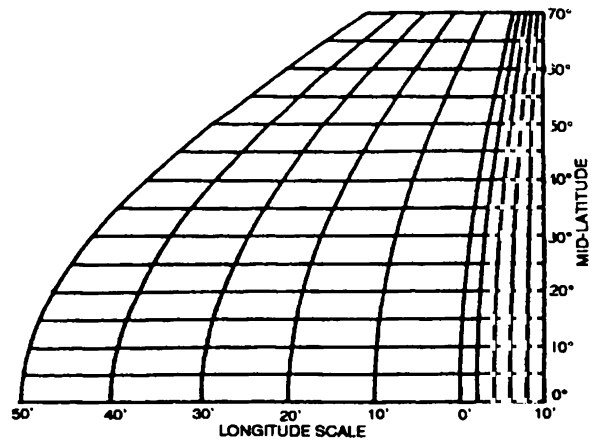
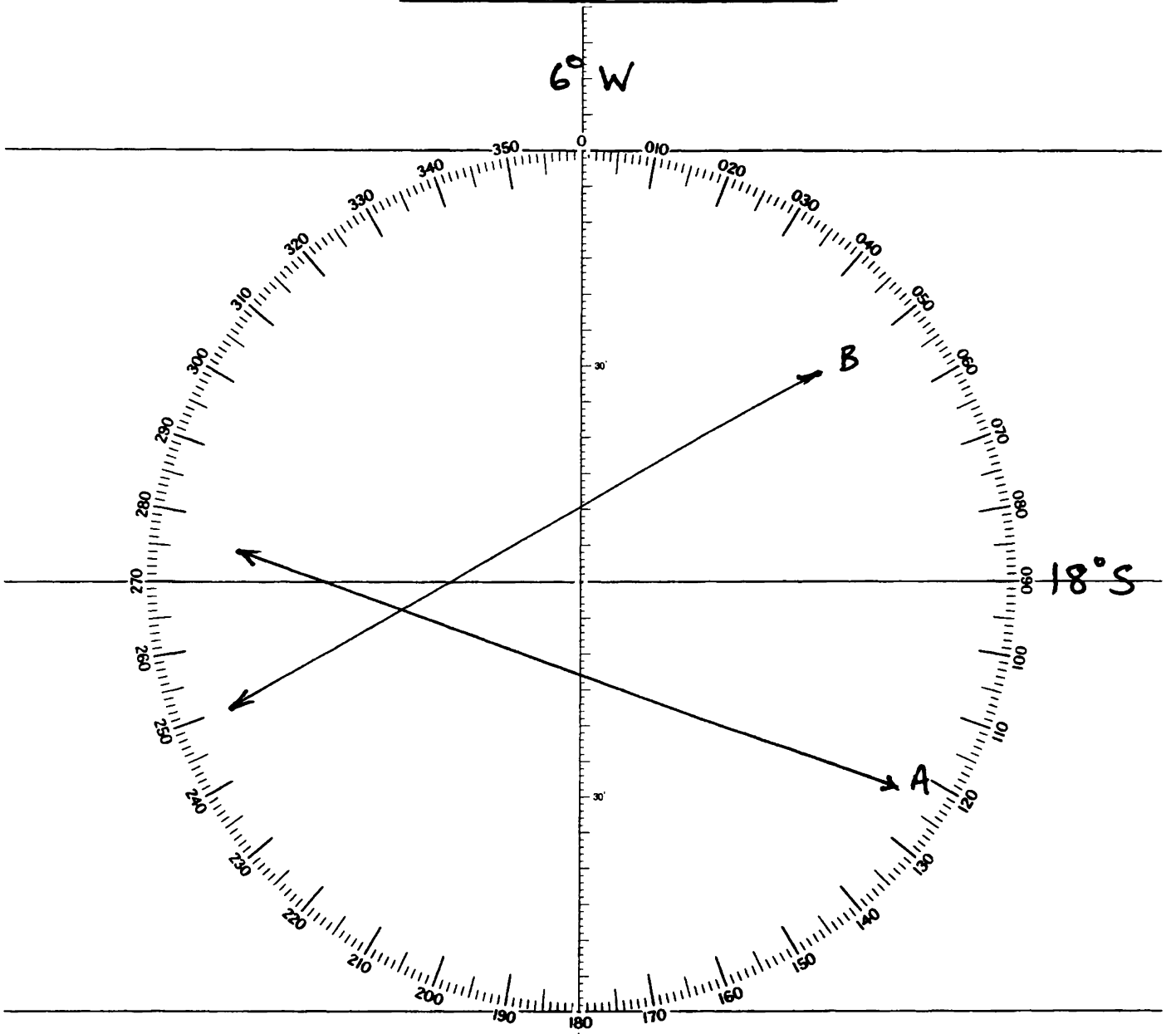



**YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
 28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
 P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
 TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

Plotting Sheet 8. A FIX FROM THE COCKED HAT FORMED FROM THREE L.O.P.s

**"Yachtmaster's" courses never end - free extra help until you pass your test.**

**LOP 'A' AT 10H00 AND LOP 'B' AT 14H30**

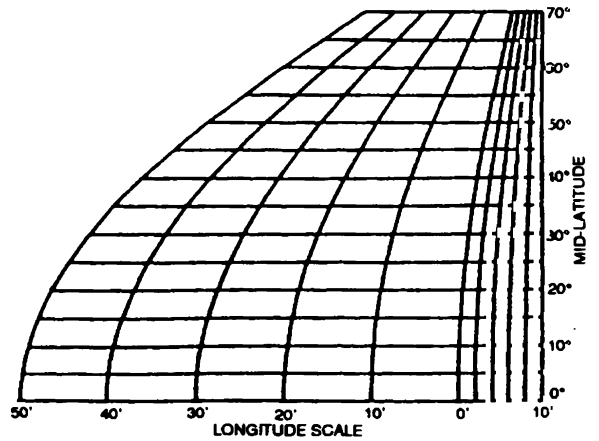
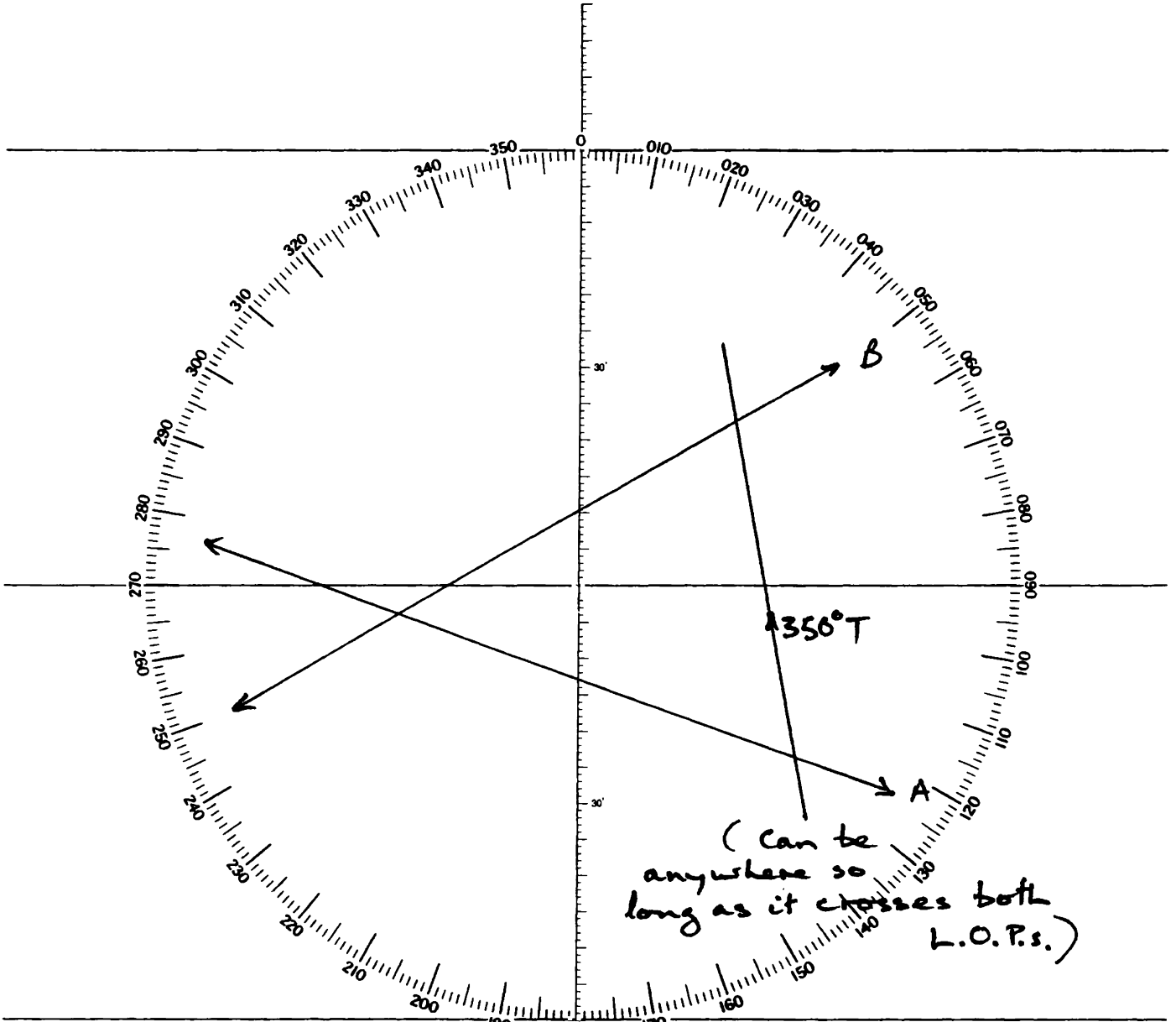


**YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
 28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
 P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
 TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

**Plotting Sheet 9. STEP 1: PLOT LOP's 'A' AND 'B'**

**Yachtmaster's courses are well prepared and professionally delivered.**

COURSE LINE OVER LOP

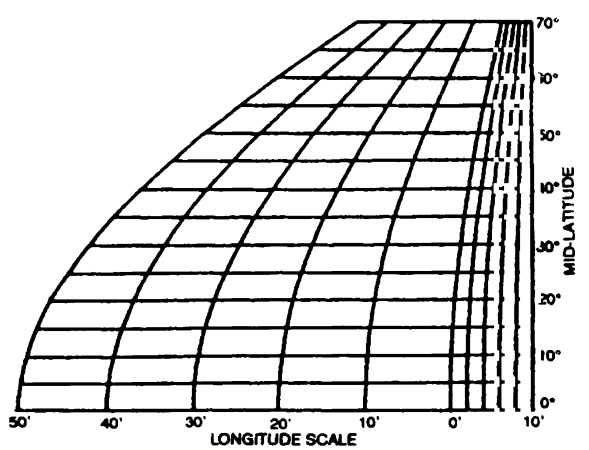
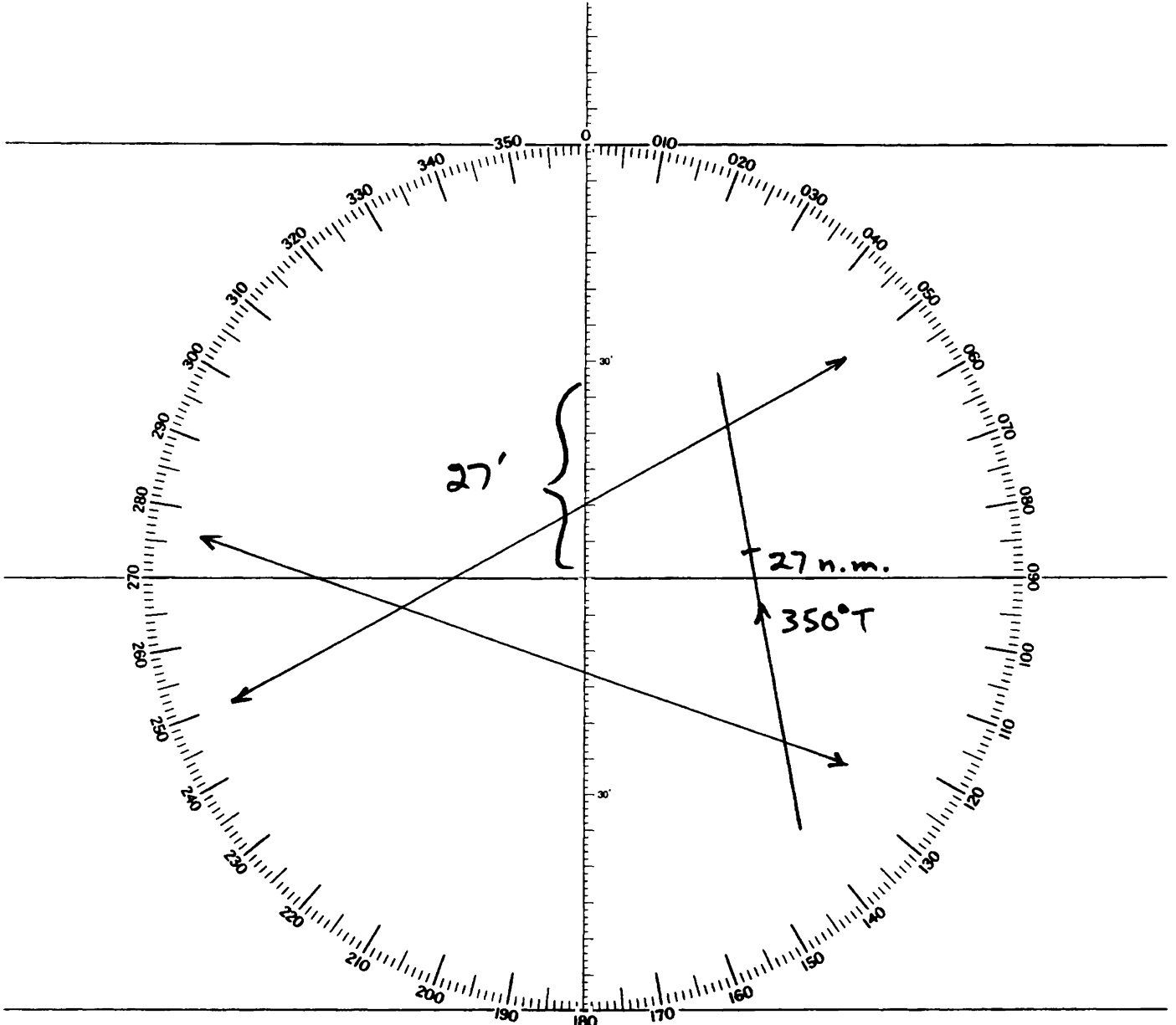


**YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
 28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
 P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
 TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

Plotting Sheet 10. PLOT THE COURSE LINE- TO CROSS 'A' AND 'B'

**"Yachtmaster's" courses never end - free extra help until you pass your test.**

**DISTANCE TRAVELLED BETWEEN SIGHTS**

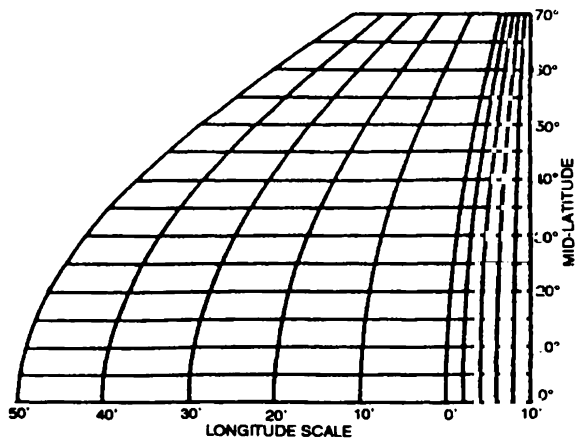
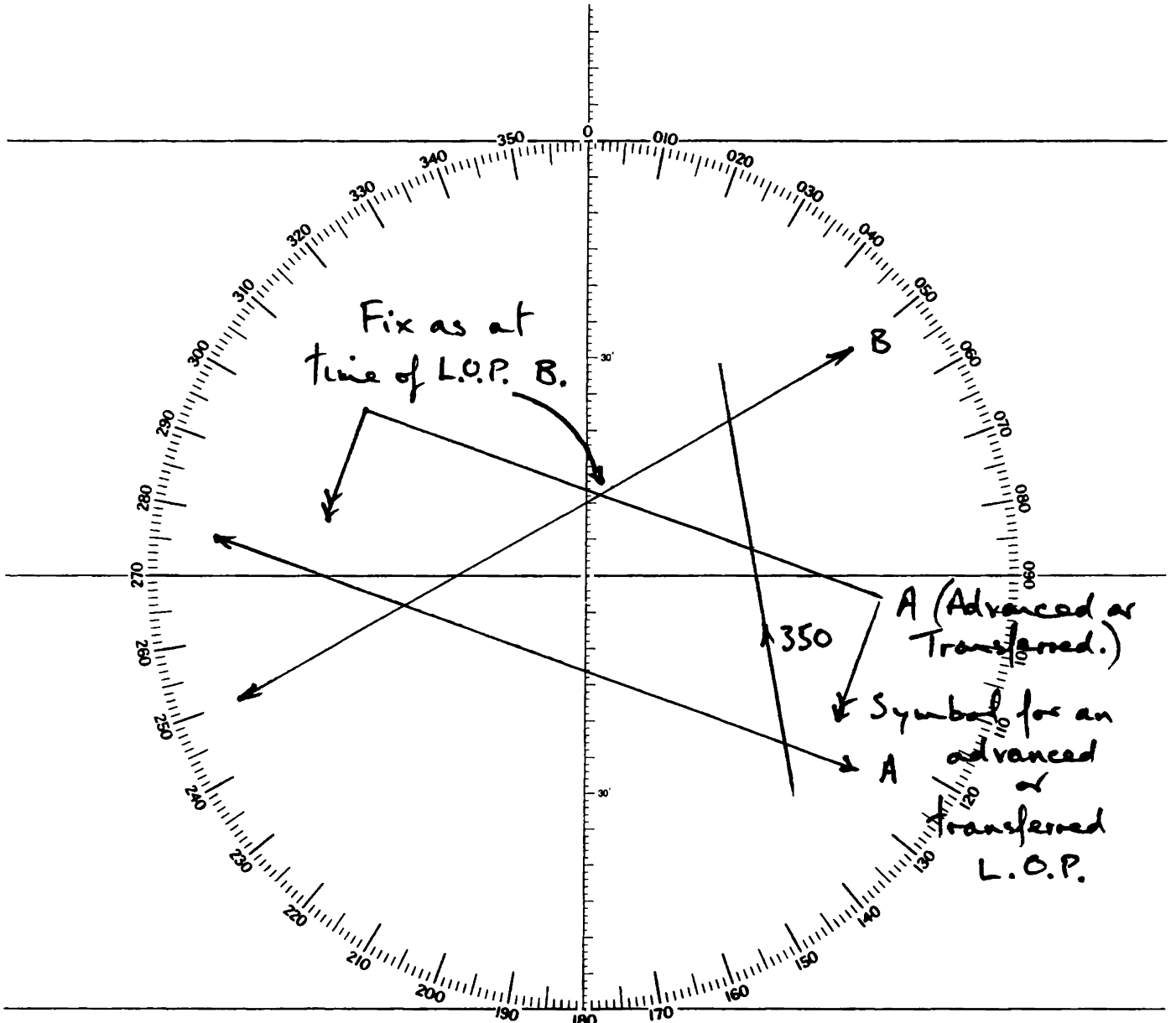


**YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
 28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
 P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
 TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

**Plotting Sheet 11. STEP 3: MARK DISTANCE TRAVELLED BETWEEN TAKING SIGHTS**

**Yachtmaster's courses are well prepared and professionally delivered.**

**TO 'ADVANCE' (or TRANSFER) LOP 'A'**



**YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
 28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
 P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
 TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

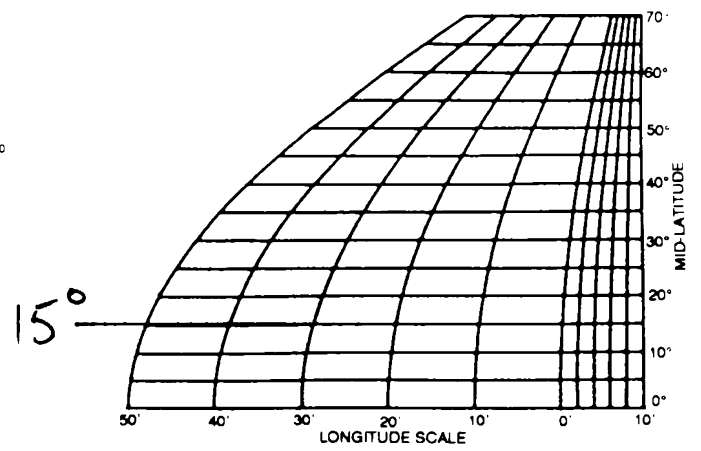
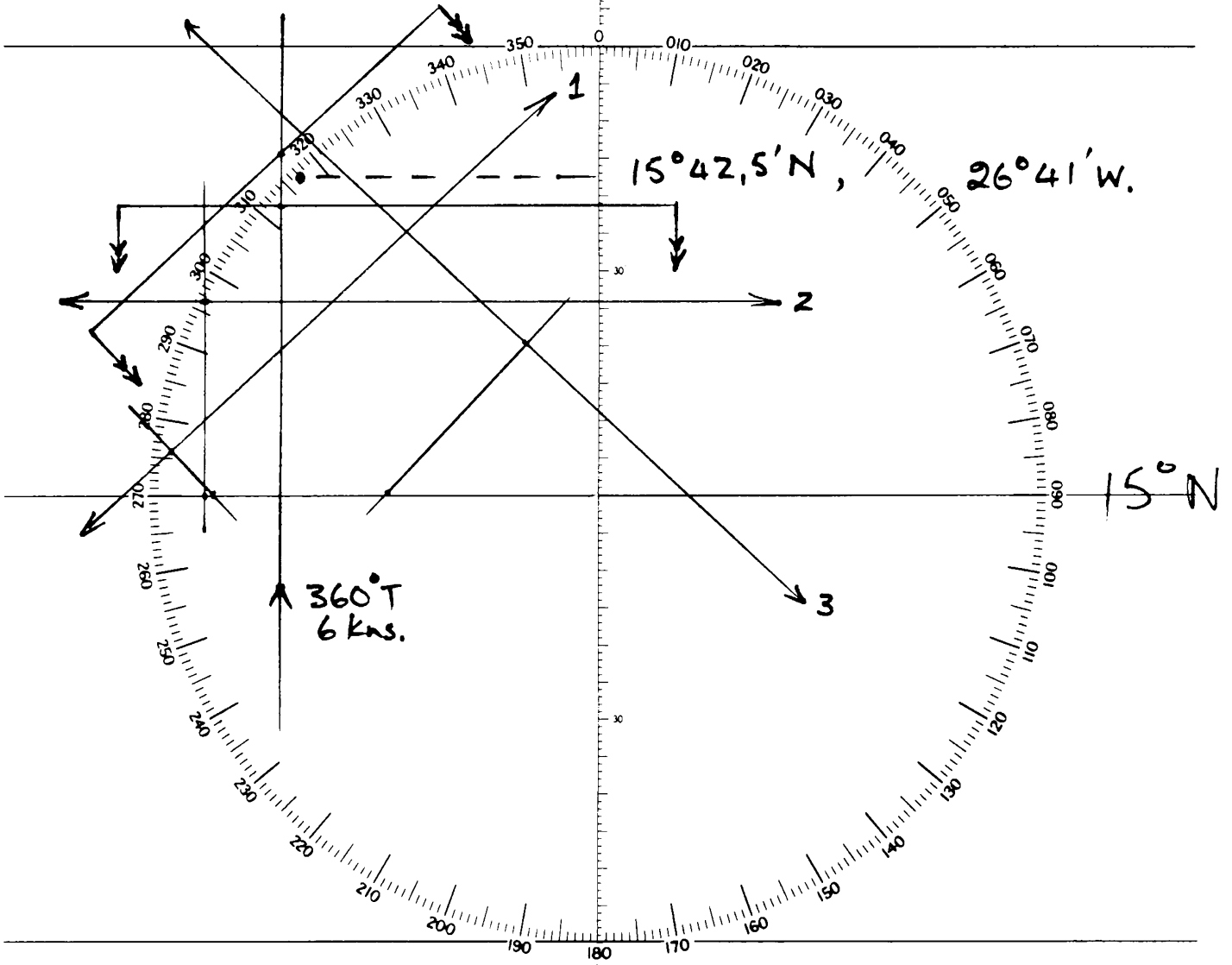
**Plotting Sheet 12. THE ADVANCED LOP 'A' INTERSECTS LOP 'B' AT THE FIX**

**"Yachtmaster's" courses never end - free extra help until you pass your test.**

**SOLUTION TO EXAMPLE 8: 'SUN-RUN-SUN' PLOT**

5 December 199x

26°W



**YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
 28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
 P O BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
 TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

Solution 8 (Plotting). PLOT SIGHTS, EXAMPLE 8, PAGE 35 SOLUTION, PAGE 39 /SOLUTION 8.b.

**Yachtmaster's courses are well prepared and professionally delivered.**

**NOTES**

## THE MOON, PLANETS AND STARS

### Introduction

So far we have dealt only with sun sights and in every method used (except the Meridian Passage sight), we obtained a Chosen Position (Chosen Latitude/Chosen Longitude), Azimuth, Intercept and a statement that the intercept was either 'Away' or 'Towards'. This information enabled us to start the plotting process. The good news is that it is no different with the moon, planets or stars sights. There are only minor variations. We do not have to master any new involved concepts, nor do we have to learn to identify one star from another or need to be able to identify the visible planets.

### The Moon

As the earth orbits around the sun, so the moon orbits around the earth. The earth takes a year to orbit the sun but the moon takes approximately 28 1/2 days to orbit the earth. The moon's orbit rate is 'approximate' because it does not move at a constant speed. To get LHA so that we can look up the tables for Hc, etc., we need to get the GHA from the Almanac. The Almanac records the GHA based on the slowest speed of the moon, and it gives us a 'v correction' - a correction to be added to the GHA which makes allowance for the increase in hour angle due to the varying speed of the moon's orbit. Look at your copy of the Almanac, right-hand daily page for 20 June 199x. To the right of the GHA column we see a column headed 'v' and notice that the values listed under this heading are 'minutes'. So if we need to know the GHA of the moon at 06h38m07s UTC (GMT), we proceed just as we would for the sun but we add one extra line before the total, namely the 'v' correction:

JUNE 18. 19. 20 (SAT.. SUN.. MON.)

UT (GMT)	SUN		MOON					
	G.H.A.	Dec.	G.H.A.	v	Dec.	d	H.P.	
23	164 39.6	25.7	27.6	0.1	15 59.3	8.4	60.2	
20 00	179 39.4	N23 25.7	03.7	6.2	S16 07.7	8.4	60.2	
01	194 39.3	25.8	28.9	6.2	16 16.1	8.2	60.2	
02	209 39.2	25.8	54.1	6.2	16 24.3	8.1	60.2	
03	224 39.0	25.8	9	19.3	6.1	16 32.4	8.1	
04	239 38.9	25.9	10	44.4	6.0	16 40.5	8.1	
05	254 38.8	25.9	12	09.4	5.9	16 48.6	8.1	
06	269 38.6	N23 25.9	13	34.3	5.9	S16 56.1	7.7	60.3
07	284 38.5	25.9	15	59.2	5.8	17 03.8	7.5	60.3
08	299 38.3	25.9	16	24.0	5.7	17 11.3	7.5	60.3
09	314 38.2	26.0	17	48.7	5.7	17 18.8	7.3	60.3

Table 14. DAILY PAGE, 20 JUNE.

### 38<sup>m</sup> INCREMENTS AND CORRECTIONS

38 <sup>m</sup>	SUN PLANETS	ARIES	MOON	v or Corr <sup>n</sup> d	v or Corr <sup>n</sup> d	v or Corr <sup>n</sup> d
00	9 30-0	9 31-6	9 04-0	0-0	0-0	6-0 3-9
01	9 30-3	9 31-8	9 04-3	0-1	0-1	6-1 3-9
02	9 30-5	9 32-1	9 04-5	0-2	0-1	6-2 4-0
03	9 30-8	9 32-3	9 04-7	0-3	0-2	6-3 4-0
04	9 31-0	9 32-6	9 05-0	0-4	0-3	6-4 4-1
05	9 31-3	9 32-8	9 05-2	0-5	0-3	6-5 4-1
06	9 31-5	9 33-1	9 05-5	0-6	0-3	6-6 4-1
07	9 31-8	9 33-3	9 05-7	0-7	0-3	6-7 4-1
08	9 32-0	9 33-6	9 05-0	0-8	0-3	6-8 4-1
09	9 32-3	9 33-8	9 05-3	0-9	0-3	6-9 4-1
10	9 32-5	9 34-1	9 05-6	0-0	0-3	7-0 4-1

Table 15. INCREMENT, 38 MINUTES 07 SECONDS.

- So:
- GHA Hour value 06h = 136°34,3'
  - Increment 38m07s (+) = 9°05,7' (Yellow pages)
  - 'v' factor 5,9' (Just like 'd' in Dec)
  - 'v' correction (+) = 3,8' (Yellow pages, ALWAYS a plus))
  - GHA required = 145°43,8' (-360° if necessary)

The second and only other difference in moon sight calculations as compared with sun calculations is

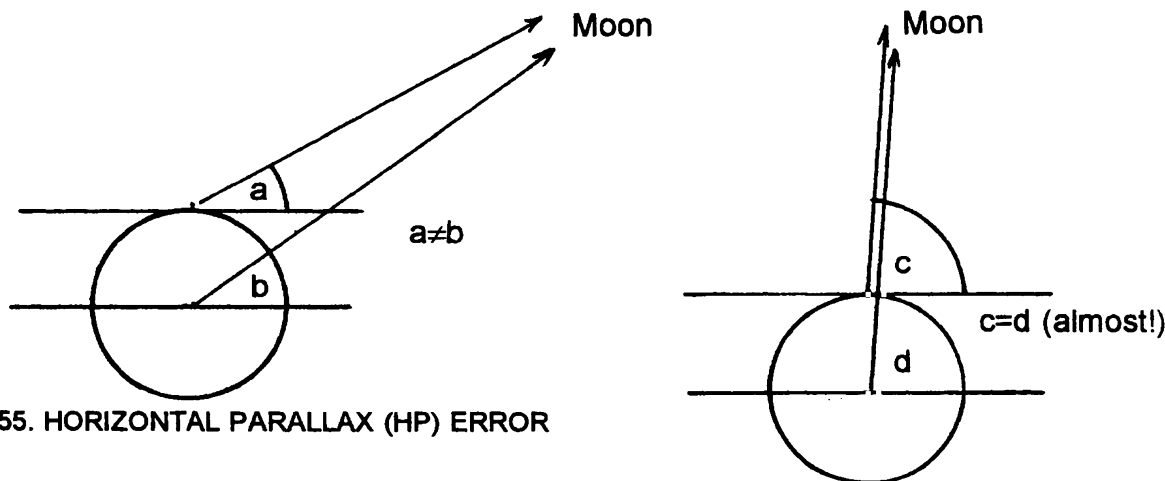


Fig. 55. HORIZONTAL PARALLAX (HP) ERROR



due to the moon being relatively close to the earth. This gives rise to what is termed the "Horizontal Parallax" (HP) error - a line from the observer to the centre of the moon is seldom parallel to a line from the centre of the earth to the centre of the moon:

This will affect the angle measured with the sextant as, after the corrections we apply for the sun, the True Altitude or Height Observed (TA or Ho) will not necessarily be the same as the corresponding angle at the centre of the earth. We use extra corrections to rectify the situation. In addition to the 'Main correction' we add a correction to allow for Upper or Lower Limb 'HP' - and if 'Upper Limb' was used, because the earlier corrections are calculated relative to the centre of the moon and Lower Limb sights, we must subtract 30' to get the angle we need.

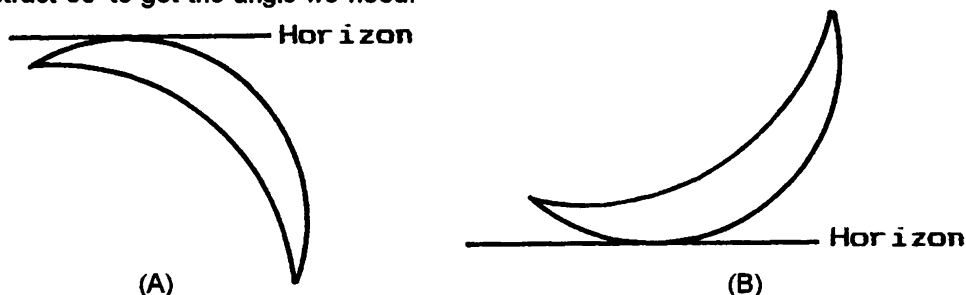


Fig. 56. UPPER (A) AND LOWER (B) LIMB ILLUSTRATIONS

Look at the back of your Almanac, the last two facing pages (or in this book, the last sample page of the Almanac section). The left page is for Apparent Altitudes (sextant angles corrected for index error and DIP - height of eye - only) from 0° to 35°, and the right-hand page is for AA's 35° to 90°. If our AA was 28° 11,2' and we had taken a Lower Limb (LL) sight when the daily pages/hour value for HP was 60,3':

AA	= 28°11,2'
Main Correction	= +59,7' ALWAYS a plus
HP Correction (under 'L')	= + 8,0' * ALWAYS a plus
UL Correction (-30')	= <u>N/A</u>
TA/Ho	= <u>29°18,9'</u>

\* Note that if the daily pages of the Almanac gave HP as, say, 54,5', the correction tables for the moon at the back of the Almanac or Almanac section in this book, HP section (bottom half) have horizontal rows for HP values of 54,3' followed by 54,6' i.e. no row for 54,5'. We would therefore have to interpolate:

54,3'	: 1,1'	
54,4'	: 1,2'	
54,5'	: 1,3'	By
54,6'	: 1,4'	interpolation

So an HP of 54,5' becomes a correction of 1,3' (if necessary, round off to the nearest single decimal).

In all other respects the resolution of a moon sight is the same as that for the sun.

**EXAMPLE 23.** Let's do an example using the Almanac's concise Sight Reduction Tables (Almanac's tables) method (page 79). We therefore use the work sheet which was shown on page 41 as 'Work Sheet 3'. Or you could use the Air Sight Reduction Tables work sheet (Work Sheet 2, Sun only) with modifications (for use with all/any celestial body), as shown on the next page as Work Sheet 5.

Our sight information is as follows:

Date	: 31 August 199x.	DR	: Lat 10°25' S, Long 8°10' E.
IE	: 3,2' "off".	Dip	: 4m height of eye.
Time	: 08h22m37s per clock.	Clock	: Set to UTC but 5 seconds fast.
Sextant	: 51°56,6'	Sight	: Moon, Upper Limb.
Course	: 090°T at 4 knots.	Log	: 12 345 M

(Note that as this sight was taken during the morning when the sun was also visible, a sun sight taken immediately before or after the moon sight will result in a two-LOP fix).

The solution is on page 79 as Solution 23. Check the working against your Almanac Extracts, Part 2.

**AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES WORK SHEET: ALL CELESTIAL BODIES**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: IE: +/- , '(-On, +Off); Eye Ht: ft/m; Clock error: h m s(Fast/Slow?)			
Course: °T/M/C; Speed: kns; Celestial Body/ies-UL/LL:			
DR Lat	° 'N/S	° 'N/S	° 'N/S
DR Long	° 'E/W	° 'E/W	° 'E/W
Chosen Lat	° 00 'N/S	° 00 'N/S	° 00 'N/S
<b>TIME</b> Clock time of sight	h m s	h m s	h m s
Clock error relative to UTC (-fast, + slow)±	h m s	h m s	h m s
<b>Corrected UTC time of sight</b> =	h m s	h m s	h m s
<b>LHA</b> GHA as at day, hr of sight: Al'nac	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
Increments for mins/secs; Yellow pages +	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
v ( ? ) ±Plnts; +Moon. Corn.(Yellow p's) ±	( ) , ' , "	( ) , ' , "	( ) , ' , "
Total GHA as at exact time of sight =	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
-360° if nec; GHA to be between 0°/ 360° -	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'
GHA Required =	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
SHA of star +	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
GHA of celestial body sighted =	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
Chosen Longitude (+E, -W) ±	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
LHA Required =	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'
+/- 360° if necessary ±	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'
<b>LHA of celestial body sighted</b> =	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'	° 00 , 0'
<b>Declination</b> day/hr of sight; next to GHA =	N/S ° , ' , "	N/S ° , ' , "	N/S ° , ' , "
(d = ?)factor; bottom of/or in moon column	(d = , )	(d = , )	(d = , )
d Corn;Yellow p's(mins)(+if Dec incr'ng) ±	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b> at time of sight =	N/S ° , ' , "	N/S ° , ' , "	N/S ° , ' , "
Lat/Dec <b>SAME</b> or <b>CONTRARY</b> (N/S) ?			
<b>Hc:</b> Hc, Sight Red Tables, 'C Lat' page:	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
(d± ?) Use with Dec's mins, Table 5.	(d = +/- )	(d = +/- )	(d = +/- )
d Correction, from Table 5 ±	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
<b>TOTAL Hc</b> (Transfer to Intercept, ↓) =	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
<b>Z → Zn</b> Top/bottom left corner SRT page.	Z = ° Zn = °	Z = ° Zn = °	Z = ° Zn = °
<b>Ho:</b> Sextant Angle (SA/Hs)Up./Low. Limb=	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
IE (-On, +Off) ±	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
DIP (Eye ht; Al'nac card/Page A2) -	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
Apparant Altitude (AA) =	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
Main corn (Al'nac card), OR ±	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
Moon corn (Back of Al'nac) +	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
Planet corn (Al'nac card) +	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
Moon HP corn (Back of Al'nac) +	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
Moon only, if UL, corn (-30,0' if UL) -	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
<b>TRUE ALTITUDE / Ho</b> Ho =	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
<b>Intercept:</b> Ho - Hc or Hc - Ho Hc =	° , ' , 0'	° , ' , 0'	° , ' , 0'
Intcpt (Difference); ~	° , ' , "	° , ' , "	° , ' , "
<b>TOWARDS</b> or <b>AWAY?</b> If Ho>Hc, Towards			

Work Sheet 5.

Solution 23 to Example 23, page 77.

**WORK SHEET FOR USE WITH ALMANAC'S SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: 31/8 DR 10°25' N/S, 8°10' E/W; IE 3.2' on/off, Eye ht: 4 m, Body Moon UL  
 Course 090° T/M/C, Speed 4 knots. Clock error to UTC h m -5 s (-fast, ±slow?),  
 Sight clock time 08 h 22 m 37 s, Sight Time Corrected to UTC(GMT) 08 h 22 m 32 s.

<b>Ho</b>		↓ → Apparent Altitude (AA)	<u>51°56.3'</u>
Sextant Angle (Hs)	<u>51°56.6'</u>	Main Correction (Al'nac card) or(+/-) Moon Correction, back of Al'nac (+)	<u>° 45.4'</u>
Index Error +/-	<u>+ 3.2'</u>	Planet Correction (Almanac card)(+)	<u>° . '</u>
DIP (Height of eye) (-)	<u>- 3.5'</u>	Moon HP Corr (Back of Al'nac) (+)	<u>° 28'</u>
Apparent Altitude (AA)	<u>51°56.3' →</u>	↑ Moon UL Corr (-30.0' only if UL) (-)	<u>- 30.0'</u>
Yachtmaster Ocean Services		<b>True Altitude (Ho)</b>	<u>52°14.5'</u>

<b>DECLINATION</b> 'Dec' as at day, hour of sight; Almanac.	<u>N/S 19°58.8'</u>	Increasing/Decreasing* hourly?
(d= ? at bottom of Dec column in Al'nac)	( <u>d 2.2</u> )	Not part of sum. See next line.
d Corr, Yellow p's, Mins (time of sight)	<u>+/- - 0.8'</u>	*+ if Dec increasing, - if decreasing
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b>	<u>N/S 19°58.0'</u>	
<b>Chosen Latitude</b>	<u>10°00.0' N/S</u>	DR Lat rounded off, nearest degree
<b>SAME or CONTRARY ?</b>	<u>Contrary</u>	Dec and Lat, SAME hemisphere?

<b>LHA</b> GHA (hr) Celestial Body, Al'nac Increment, for mins/secs. + v. (10, 7 factor) +/- Planets; +Moon. Corr= +	<u>8°43.7'</u> <u>5°22.6'</u> <u>+ 4.0'</u> <u>14°10.3'</u> <u>° 00.0'</u> <u>° . '</u> <u>14°10.3'</u> <u>8°49.7'</u> <u>23°00.0'</u> <u>° 00.0'</u> <u>23°00.0'</u>	Date page, choose body's name column. Yellow p's; NB: Use correct column heading. Bottom of Planet column; or Moon, next to GHA; treat as d for Dec Corr, Yellow p's. Sum of above lines. GHA must be between 0° and 360°. GHA: angle, 0° westward, to meridian of GP. Almanac, left day page, right hand column. Omit this and above line if not for a star. DR degrees; mins to make LHA whole number. Angle, your meridian west to meridian of GP. LHA to be between 0° and 360°. Now we can start with the Sight Redn. Tables.
Total GHA =	<u>14°10.3'</u>	
- 360° if above line >360° -	<u>° 00.0'</u>	
Total GHA if different. =	<u>° . '</u>	
SHA of Star +	<u>° . '</u>	
GHA of Celestial Body =	<u>14°10.3'</u>	
Chosen Longitude (+E, -W) +/-	<u>8°49.7'</u>	
LHA of Celestial Body =	<u>23°00.0'</u>	
+/- 360° if necessary +/-	<u>° 00.0'</u>	
LHA Required =	<u>23°00.0'</u>	

**USE OF SIGHT REDUCTION TABLE (SRT)** By Henton Jaaback

1. Select SRT page with above 'Chosen Lat'  
 Under Lat, opposite LHA (as above):  
A° = 23° (nearest whole degree), A = 387  
B = 79°09', Z1 = 85.8 (B/Z1 ' if 90° < LHA < 270°)

Dec = 19°58' N/S (+ SAME, ' CONTRARY)  
 F = + 59°11'  
 (F° = + 59 [nearest degree], F = 11)

2. SRT page with A° value as column heading. Under A° opposite F°; H = 52°06.0'  
P° = 50° (nearest whole degree), Z2 = 57.0  
 H = 52°06.0' Z1 = 85.8 + or - as for B.  
 Corr 1 = + 8.0' Z2 = 57.0 (if F° '-', use 180° - Z2).  
 Corr 2 = + 12.0' (Z2 is ' if F° > 90°).  
 Hc = 52°26.0' Z = 142.8 Ignore ' if applic.  
 Ho = 52°14.5'  
 Intcpt = 11.5'

3. Go to Auxiliary Table (pages 316/317).  
 Under F° column opposite P° in left column,  
 what is: Corrn 1 ? + 8.0' (' if F° < 90° and F° > 29', or if F° > 90° and F° < 30'. Otherwise '+')

4. Under A° column, opposite Z2 (right hand column), what is Corrn 2 ? + 12.0' (' if A° < 30°)

**IF DR in N LAT:**  
 If LHA > 180° Zn = Z  
 If LHA < 180° Zn = 360° - Z

**IF DR in S LAT:**  
 If LHA > 180° Zn = 180° - Z  
 If LHA < 180° Zn = 180° + Z

**TOWARDS** if Ho > Hc, **AWAY** if Hc > Ho Zn = 323° T

Now here are some examples for you to do on your own - the answers, when you have finished or are 'stuck', are in the 'Solutions' section in Part 2.; see Solutions 24 and 25.

**EXAMPLE 24.** Using Air SRTs. (SRTs = Sight Reduction Tables.)

Date	: 5 December 199x	DR: Lat 15°25' N, Long 26°05' W	IE: 1,7' on.
Dip	: Height of eye 3 m.	Clock time 19h07m48s.	Sextant angle 37°46,0'
Clock:	: Set to UTC, but 21 seconds fast.	Sight: Moon, LL	Course 130°M at 8 knots.

**EXAMPLE 25.** Using Almanac SRTs.

Date	: 27 February 199x.	DR: Lat 38°12' N, Long 80°15' E.	IE: 1,0' "ON".
Dip	: Height of eye 3,5m.	Clock Time : 00h37m06s.	Sextant angle: 9°31,7'.
Clock	: Set to UTC, but 42 seconds slow.	Sight : Moon, LL.	Course : 080°T at 7 knots.

## Planets

All planets, of which the earth is one, have their own independent orbits around the sun. Each takes a different period of time, the earth's orbit taking a year. Planets are therefore sometimes called 'the wandering stars' - as opposed to the 'fixed' stars - stars remaining (almost) in the same place relative to each other.

There are nine principal planets but only four are suitable for navigation purposes. They are Venus (the brightest because it is nearer the sun than all other planets), Mars (the red-coloured planet), Jupiter - sometimes visible by day if a strong sextant telescope is used (same applies to Venus), and Saturn - the yellowish planet which is the least bright but is as bright as the brightest star.

When taking a sextant sight of a planet, you will notice that it is so small that no 'Upper' or 'Lower' Limb can be seen - it is just a 'dot' - set the sextant so that the 'dot' is on the horizon when the sextant is vertical.

### Identifying Planets

Planets do not 'twinkle' like stars do. They are brighter than stars and when viewed through the sextant's telescope they appear as solid but very small 'round ball' lights. If we need to identify a planet, it can be done one of two ways.

**Method 1.** Take a sextant sight of the planet to be identified, noting the exact angle, time and the compass bearing converted to Azimuth (Zn) - the True bearing to the planet. Knowing your DR, look in the Air or Marine Sight Reduction Tables at the pages for your nearest latitude (whole number of degrees), 'SAME' and 'CONTRARY'. (If you are using the Almanac's Sight Reduction Tables, you will have to try calculating various combinations; a laborious exercise which is not recommended.) You will find only one combination of Hc and Z (convert from Zn) that will be the same as your sight. Look to the side columns to read off LHA and get two (one left hand column, one right and column) possible values. Now since

$$\text{LHA} = \text{GHA} + \text{East Longitude, and}$$

$$\text{LHA} = \text{GHA} - \text{West Longitude,}$$

GHA must be:

$$\text{GHA} = \text{LHA} - \text{East Longitude, and}$$

$$\text{GHA} = \text{LHA} + \text{West Longitude.}$$

So our two possibles for LHA become two possibles for GHA! Now look in the Almanac, left facing page on the day in question and look at the four planets' GHAs. At the hour of our sight, one planet's GHA will be the same or very close to the one we have just calculated.

Our Azimuth (magnetic converted to 'True') or Zn can also be related to the two possibles depending on which hemisphere we are in:

$$\text{DR Lat 'North'... LHA} > 180^\circ, \text{Zn} = \text{Z}$$

$$\text{LHA} < 180^\circ, \text{Zn} = 360^\circ - \text{Z} \dots$$

DR Lat 'South'... LHA > 180°, Zn = 180° - Z  
 LHA < 180°, Zn = 180° + Z

If we are in the northern hemisphere, our Z could be one of two possibles, which when compared together with the sextant angle against the Hc and Z in the Tables, will serve as a confirmation check. A DR in the southern hemisphere is easier - if Zn is greater than 180°, Z must be Zn-180°. If Zn is less than 180°, Z must be 180° - Zn.

**EXAMPLE 26.** Let's do an example.

The date is 20 June 199x and we see a planet in the evening twilight. We note the magnetic bearing to be between 340° and 342°, and since the magnetic variation (as seen on our chart) at our DR (30°25' S, 26°10' W) is 21°W, the Azimuth is +/- 320° T. Our sextant angle is 28°52,8' when index error is 2' 'off' the scale and height of eye is 3,5m. Our clock set to UTC (GMT) is 1 second fast. The clock shows the time of the sight to be 19h52m12s. Our sextant angle is approximately equal to the Hc and is 28°52,8'.

Since we are 'South' and Zn = +/- 320° T, Z = 320° - 180° = 140°, we therefore look up in the Sight Reduction Tables on the pages for our DR Latitude (nearest degree), 30°, to find the nearest combination of Hc = +/- 28°52,8' and Z = +/- 140°. See Table 16 below.

N. Lat. { LHA greater than 180°..... Zn=Z  
 LHA less than 180°..... Zn=360-Z

**DECLINATION (15°-29°) CONTRARY N**

LHA	15°			16°			17°			18°			19°			20°			21°			22°			23°		
	Hc	d	Z	Hc	d	Z	Hc	d	Z	Hc	d	Z	Hc	d	Z	Hc	d	Z	Hc	d	Z	Hc	d	Z	Hc	d	Z
69	0949	35	114	0914	34	115	0840	35	115	0805	34	116	0731	35	117	0656	35	118	0621	35	119	0546	35	120	0511	35	120
68	1036	35	114	1001	34	115	0927	35	116	0852	35	117	0817	35	118	0742	36	119	0706	35	119	0631	35	120	0556	36	121
67	1123	35	115	1048	35	116	1013	35	117	0938	35	117	0903	36	118	0827	35	119	0752	36	120	0716	36	121	0640	36	121
66	1210	35	116	1135	35	116	1100	36	117	1024	36	118	0948	36	119	0912	36	120	0836	36	120	0800	36	121	0724	36	122
65	1257	-36	116	1221	-35	117	1146	-36	118	1110	-36	119	1034	-37	119	0957	-36	120	0921	-36	121	0845	-37	122	0808	-36	123
64	1344	36	117	1308	36	118	1232	37	118	1155	36	119	1119	37	120	1042	36	121	1006	37	122	0929	37	122	0852	37	123
63	1430	36	117	1354	37	118	1317	36	119	1241	37	120	1204	37	121	1127	37	121	1050	37	122	1013	38	123	0935	37	124
62	1516	37	118	1439	36	119	1403	37	120	1326	38	120	1248	37	121	1211	37	122	1134	38	123	1056	38	124	1018	37	124
61	1602	37	119	1525	37	119	1448	38	120	1410	37	121	1333	38	122	1255	38	123	1217	38	123	1139	38	124	1101	38	125
60	1647	-37	119	1610	-38	120	1532	-37	121	1455	-38	122	1417	-38	122	1339	-39	123	1300	-38	124	1222	-38	125	1144	-39	126
59	1733	38	120	1655	38	121	1617	38	121	1539	38	122	1501	39	123	1422	39	124	1343	38	125	1305	39	125	1226	39	126
58	1818	38	120	1740	39	121	1701	38	122	1623	39	123	1544	39	124	1505	39	124	1426	39	125	1347	39	126	1308	40	127
57	1902	38	121	1824	39	122	1745	39	123	1706	39	123	1627	39	124	1548	40	125	1508	39	126	1429	40	127	1349	40	127
56	1947	39	122	1908	39	123	1829	40	123	1749	39	124	1710	40	125	1630	40	126	1550	40	126	1510	40	127	1430	40	128
55	2031	-40	122	1951	-39	123	1912	-40	124	1832	-40	125	1752	-40	126	1712	-40	126	1632	-40	127	1552	-41	128	1511	-41	129
54	2114	39	123	2035	40	124	1955	40	125	1915	41	125	1834	40	126	1754	41	127	1713	41	128	1632	41	129	1551	41	129
53	2158	40	124	2118	41	125	2037	40	125	1957	41	126	1916	41	127	1835	41	128	1754	41	128	1713	42	129	1631	41	130
52	2241	41	124	2200	40	125	2120	41	126	2039	41	127	1958	42	128	1916	41	128	1835	42	129	1753	42	130	1711	42	131
51	2324	41	125	2243	41	126	2202	42	127	2120	41	128	2039	42	128	1957	42	129	1915	42	130	1833	43	131	1750	42	131
50	2406	-41	126	2325	-42	127	2243	-42	127	2201	-42	128	2119	-42	129	2037	-42	130	1955	-43	131	1912	-43	131	1829	-43	132
49	2448	42	127	2406	42	127	2324	42	128	2242	43	129	2159	42	130	2117	43	130	2034	43	131	1951	43	132	1908	44	133
48	2529	42	127	2447	42	128	2405	43	129	2322	43	130	2239	43	131	2156	43	131	2113	44	132	2029	43	133	1946	44	133
47	2610	42	128	2528	43	129	2445	43	130	2402	44	130	2318	43	131	2235	44	132	2151	44	133	2107	44	133	2023	44	134
46	2651	43	129	2608	43	130	2525	44	130	2441	44	131	2357	44	132	2313	44	133	2229	44	133	2145	45	134	2100	45	135
45	2731	-43	130	2648	-44	131	2604	-44	131	2520	-44	132	2436	-45	133	2351	-44	133	2307	-45	134	2222	-45	135	2137	-45	136
44	2811	44	130	2727	44	131	2643	44	132	2559	45	133	2514	45	133	2429	45	134	2344	46	135	2258	45	136	2213	46	136
43	2851	45	131	2806	45	132	2721	45	133	2636	45	134	2551	45	134	2506	46	135	2420	45	136	2335	46	136	2249	47	137
42	2929	45	132	2844	45	133	2759	45	134	2714	46	134	2628	46	135	2542	46	136	2456	46	137	2410	46	137	2324	47	138
41	3008	46	133	2922	45	134	2837	46	134	2751	46	135	2705	47	136	2618	46	137	2532	47	137	2445	47	138	2358	47	139
40	3045	-45	134	3000	-46	135	2914	-47	135	2827	-46	136	2741	-47	137	2654	-47	137	2607	-47	138	2520	-48	139	2432	-47	139
39	3123	47	135	3036	46	135	2950	47	136	2903	47	137	2816	47	138	2729	48	138	2641	47	139	2554	48	140	2506	48	140
38	3159	46	136	3113	47	136	3026	48	137	2938	47	138	2851	48	138	2803	48	139	2715	48	140	2627	48	140	2539	49	141
37	3236	48	136	3148	47	137	3101	48	138	3013	48	139	2925	48	139	2837	48	140	2749	49	141	2700	49	141	2611	49	142
36	3311	48	137	3223	48	138	3135	48	139	3047	48	139	2959	49	140	2910	49	141	2821	49	141	2732	49	142	2643	49	143
35	3346	-48	138	3258	-49	139	3209	-48	140	3121	-49	140	3032	-49	141	2943	-50	142	2853	-49	142	2804	-50	143	2714	-50	144
34	3420	48	139	3332	49	140	3243	49	141	3154	50	141	3104	49	142	3015	50	143	2925	50	143	2835	50	144	2745	51	144
33	3454	49	140	3405	50	141	3315	49	142	3226	50	142	3136	50	143	3046	50	143	2956	51	144	2905	50	145	2815	51	145
32	3527	50	141	3437	50	142	3347	50	142	3257	50	143	3207	51	144	3116	50	144	3026	51	145	2935	51	146	2844	51	146
31	3559	50	142	3509	50	143	3419	51	143	3328	51	144	3237	51	145	3146	51	145	3055	51	146	3004	52	147	2912	51	147
30	3631	-51	143	3540	-51	144	3449	-51	144	3358	-51	145	3307	-51	146	3216	-52	146	3124	-52	147	3032	-52	147	2940	-52	148
29	3702	51	144	3611	52	145	3519	51	145	3428	52	146	3336	52	147	3244	52	147	3152	52	148	3100	53	148	3007	52	149
28	3732	52	145	3640	52	146	3548	52	146	3456	52	147	3404	52	148	3312	53	148	3219	52	149	3127	53	149	3034	53	150
27	3801	52	146	3709	52	147	3617	53	147	3524	52	148	3432	53	149	3339	53	149	3246	53	150	3153	53	150	3100	54	151
26	3830	53	147	3737	53	148	3644	52	149	3552	54	149	3458	53	150	3405	53	150	3312	54	151	3218	53	151	3125	54	152
25	3857	-53	148	3804	-53	149	3711	-53	150	3618	-54	150	3524	-53	151	3431	-54	151	3337	-54	152	3243	-54	152	3149	-54	153
24	3924	53	149	3831	54	150	3737	54	151	3643	54	151	3549	54	152	3455	54	152	3401	54	153	3307	55	153	3212	54	154
23	3950	54	151	3856	54	151	3802	54	152	3708	54	152	3614	55	153	3519	55	153	3424	54	154	3330	55	154	3235	55	155
22	4015	54	152	3921	55	152	3826	54	153	3732	55	153	3637	55	154	3547	55	154	3447	55	155	3352	56	155	3256	55	156
21	4040	55	153	3946	55	153	3851	55	154	3755	56	154	3659	56	155	3614	56	155	3464	56	156	3407	56	156	3317	56	157
20	4065	55	153	3971	56	154	3906	56	155	3810	56	155	3718	57	156												

The nearest we can get is on the Lat 30°, 'CONTRARY' page under the column for Declination 20°. As we are 'south' and Contrary applies, 'Dec' must be North. We need to look for a planet whose Dec is N 20°. The table's Hc is 28°37' and Z is 140°. In the side columns we see the LHA is either 37° (left hand column) or 323° (right hand column) . Our DR longitude is 26°10' W so the GHA must be:

$$\text{GHA} = \text{LHA} + \text{W Longitude, so } \text{GHA} = 37^\circ + 26^\circ 10' = 63^\circ 10', \text{ or}$$

$$\text{GHA} = 323^\circ + 26^\circ 10' = 349^\circ 10'$$

Now we look in the Almanac on 20 June, opposite the UTC (GMT) time (hour value) of our sight and under the four planets' names and we see that Venus has a GHA of 49°26,4' (at 19h, -our sight was at 19h52 and as GHA changes about 15° per hour, this translates to a GHA at the time of our sight of 62°28,7') and Dec of N 20°33,9'. No other planet has a GHA or Dec anything like these figures so our planet is VENUS ! Knowing the Planet's name, we can now calculate, using any method we choose, the details for plotting the LOP. (See page 83, Solution 26 which uses the Almanac Sight Reduction Tables.)

**Method 2.** If we want to find a particular planet, for example Jupiter, we first need to know that at twilight, the LHA will be between 0° and 90° , or between 270° and 360° , otherwise it will be below our horizon:

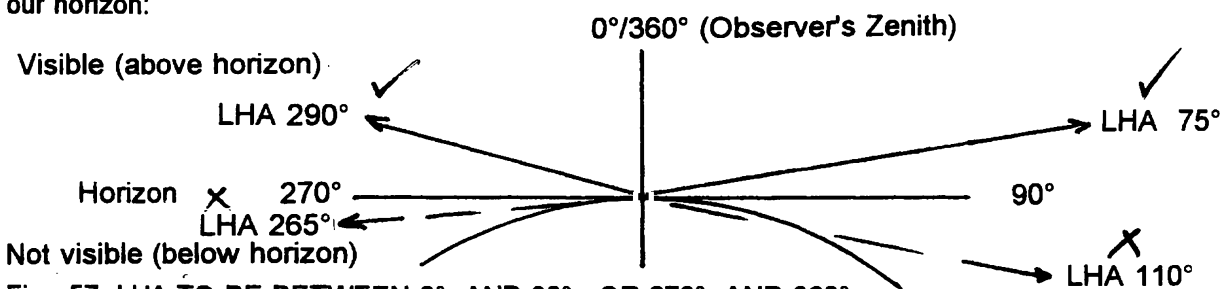


Fig. 57. LHA TO BE BETWEEN 0° AND 90° , OR 270° AND 360°.

We therefore convert our DR longitude to 'Time' (Arc to Time conversion table, see Table 3, page 17, or the first of the 'Yellow Pages' in your Almanac) and apply it to the GHA of Jupiter at the time (UTC) we expect twilight, and we get a LHA - is Jupiter going to be above our horizon?

**Twilight**

If we use the example earlier where the date is 20 June, our DR Long of 26°10' W = 1hr 45 mins (to the nearest minute), and the Almanac gives sunset at 30° South as 17h 08 local time which will be 18h53 UTC (17h08 + 1h45). Planets (normally) and stars can be seen only while the horizon is still adequately visible. This is between Sunset and Civil Twilight at night and between Civil Twilight and Sunrise in the mornings. There is normally a period of just over 20 minutes in which to take twilight sights. (Continued on page 84.)

Lat.	Sunset	Twilight		Moonset			
		Civil	Naut.	18	19	20	21
	h m	h m	h m	h m	h m	h m	h m
N 72	□	□	□	22 54	22 26	■	■
N 70	□	□	□	23 16	23 06	22 50	■
68	□	□	□	23 32	23 34	23 40	23 59
66	□	□	□	23 46	23 55	24 12	00 12
64	22 32	///	///	23 57	24 13	00 13	00 36
62	21 54	///	///	24 07	00 07	00 27	00 55
60	21 27	23 14	///	24 15	00 15	00 39	01 11
	21 07	22 23	///	00 02	00 00	00 49	01 24
		21 53	///	00 00	00 00	00 58	01 35
		21 30	22 00	00 00	01 12	01 00	01 46
30	17 08	18 08	18 37	00 36	01 18	02 00	02 46
20	18 42	18 46	18 54	00 43	01 30	02 20	03 06
N 10	18 23	18 46	18 54	00 50	01 40	02 33	03 30
0	18 05	18 23	18 54	00 55	01 49	02 45	03 45
S 10	17 47	17 10	18 37	01 01	01 58	02 58	04 00
20	17 29	17 53	18 20	01 08	02 08	03 11	04 15
30	17 08	17 34	17 55	01 17	02 20	03 27	04 33
35	16 55	17 23	17 55	01 27	02 27	03 35	04 44
40	16 41	17 12	17 46	01 24	02 34	03 46	04 56
45	16 24	16 59	17 28	01 20	02 43	03 59	05 10

Table 17. SUNSET AND TWILIGHT TABLES

Solution 26 to Example 26, page 81.

**WORK SHEET FOR USE WITH ALMANAC'S SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: 20/6 DR 30° 25' N/S, 26° 10' E/W; IE 2.0' off, Eye ht: 3.5 m, Body VENUS  
 Course 125°, Speed 6.5 knots. Clock error to UTC h m s (-fast, +slow?),  
 Sight clock time 19 h 52 m 12 s, Sight Time Corrected to UTC(GMT) 19 h 52 m 11 s.

<b>Ho</b>		↓ → Apparent Altitude (AA)	<u>28° 51.6'</u>
Sextant Angle (Hs)	<u>28° 52.8'</u>	Main Correction (Al'nac card) or (+/-) Moon Correction, back of Al'nac (+)	<u>- 1.8'</u>
Index Error +/-	<u>+ 2.0'</u>	Planet Correction (Almanac card)(+)	<u>+ 0.1'</u>
DIP (Height of eye) (-)	<u>- 3.2'</u>	Moon HP Corr (Back of Al'nac) (+)	<u>. '</u>
Apparent Altitude (AA)	<u>28° 51.6'</u>	↑ Moon UL Corr (-30.0' only if UL) (-)	<u>. '</u>
Yachtmaster Ocean Services		<b>True Altitude (Ho)</b>	<u>28° 49.9'</u>

<b>DECLINATION</b> 'Dec' as at day, hour of sight; Almanac.	<u>N/S 20° 34.5'</u>	Increasing/Decreasing* hourly?
(d = ? at bottom of Dec column in Al'nac)	<u>(d 0.7)</u>	Not part of sum. See next line.
d Corr, Yellow p's, Mins (time of sight)	<u>- 0.6'</u>	*+ if Dec increasing, - if decreasing
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b>	<u>N/S 20° 34.0'</u>	Rounded off - nearest whole minute
<b>Chosen Latitude</b>	<u>30° 00.0' N/S</u>	DR Lat rounded off, nearest degree
<b>SAME or CONTRARY ?</b>	<u>Contrary</u>	Dec and Lat, SAME hemisphere?

<b>LHA</b> GHA (hr) Cel'stial Body, Al'nac Increment, for mins/secs. + v: (-0.6 factor) +/- Planets; +Moon. Corr= +/-	<u>49° 26.4'</u> <u>13° 02.8'</u> <u>- 0.5'</u> <u>62° 28.7'</u> <u>° 00.0'</u> <u>° . '</u> <u>62° 28.7'</u> <u>- 26° 28.7'</u> <u>36° 00.0'</u> <u>° 00.0'</u> <u>36° 00.0'</u>	Date page, choose body's name column. Yellow p's; NB: Use correct column heading. Bottom of Planet column; or Moon, next to GHA; treat as d for Dec Corr, Yellow p's. Sum of above lines. GHA must be between 0° and 360°. GHA: angle, 0° westward, to meridian of GP. Almanac, left day page, right hand column. Omit this and above line if not for a star. DR degrees; mins to make LHA whole number. Angle, your meridian west to meridian of GP. LHA to be between 0° and 360°. Now we can start with the Sight Redn. Tables.
Total GHA - 360° if above line >360° Total GHA if different. SHA of Star GHA of Celestial Body Chosen Longitude (+E, -W) +/- LHA of Celestial Body +/- 360° if necessary LHA Required		

**USE OF SIGHT REDUCTION TABLE (SRT)** By Henton Jaaback

1. Select SRT page with above 'Chosen Lat'  
Under Lat, opposite LHA (as above):  
A° = 31° (nearest whole degree), A' = 36'  
B = 54° 29', Z1 = 70.8' (B/Z1 if 90° < LHA < 270°)

Dec = - 20° 34' N/S ('+ SAME, '-' CONTRARY)  
F = + 33° 55'  
(F° = +/- 34° [nearest degree], F = 55°)

2. SRT page with A° value as column heading. Under A° opposite F°; H = 28° 38'  
P° = 54° (nearest whole degree), Z2 = 70.8'  
H = 28° 38.0'      Z1 = 70.0' + or - as for B.  
Corm 1 = - 4.0'      Z2 = 70.8' (if F° = '-', use 180° - Z2).  
Corm 2 = + 8.0'      (Z2 is '-' if F° > 90°).  
Hc = 28° 42.0'      Z = 140.8' Ignore '-'  
Ho = 28° 49.9'      if applic.

3. Go to Auxiliary Table (pages 316/317).  
Under F° column opposite P° in left column,  
what is: Corm 1 ? - 4.0' ('-' if F° < 90° and  
F° > 29', or if F° > 90° and F° < 30'. Otherwise '+')

4. Under A° column, opposite Z2 (right hand  
column), what is Corm 2 ? + 8.0'  
('' if A' < 30')

**IF DR in N LAT:**  
If LHA > 180° Zn = Z  
If LHA < 180° Zn = 360° - Z

**IF DR in S LAT:**  
If LHA > 180° Zn = 180° - Z  
If LHA < 180° Zn = 180° + Z

Intcpt = 7.9'  
**TOWARDS** if Ho > Hc, **AWAY** if Hc > Ho      Zn = 321° T (To the nearest degree.)

If our sight is to be about 10 to 15 minutes after sunset, the sight time will be approximately 19h05 UTC. We can therefore look up the GHA of Jupiter at that time:

GHA hour value	340°39,2'	
Increment 5m 00s	+ 1°15,0'	
v +2,6 v corr'n	+ 0,2'	(As this is always small, we could ignore it at this stage)
Total GHA	= 341°54,4'	

We can convert this to LHA by subtracting our West longitude:

GHA	= 341°54,4'
Chosen Longitude	-26°54,4'
LHA	= 315°00,0'
-360° if necessary	- N/A ° , ' , ''
LHA Required	= 315°00,0'

We will be able to see Mars- it will not be below the horizon.

Next to the GHA in the Almanac we see the Dec of Jupiter to be S 12°00,3'.

Knowing DR Lat, Dec and LHA, we can look up the Sight Reduction Tables (Same page because DR Lat and Dec are both south) to find Hc and Z. We see they are 44°40' and 104°.

Zn is therefore = 076° T. (S Lat; LHA>180°, Zn = 180° - Z)

We must therefore look in the approximate direction 075°T and at an altitude of about 45° at about 19h05 UTC to find Jupiter.

### The Planet Sight

There is nothing special to taking a planet sight nor resolving for the applicable plotting information. The use of a work sheet also makes it very easy to do. Let's do some examples using the Air Sight Reduction Tables and Almanac's Sight Reduction Tables methods/work sheets.

#### **EXAMPLE 27** (Air Sight Reduction Tables - planet's identity to be established.)

Date	: 20 June 199x.	DR: Lat 30°25' S, Long 26°10' W.
Time	: 19h07m36s UTC per clock having a '4 seconds fast' error.	
Sextant	: 45°11,8'.	Compass bearing to planet at time of sight, converted to True : 075° T.
Dip	: 4,5m above sea level.	Course: 320°M, 5 knots.
IE	: 3,7' 'off'.	

First check GHA's/LHA's; only Venus and Jupiter will be visible/above the horizon. Resolve for both, one will become obviously wrong, the other right. (See the next page for the worked solution, Solution 27. Check that you can find all the values entered from the applicable Tables in Part 2.)

#### **EXAMPLE 28.** (Almanac's Sight Reduction Tables - planet's identity known.) (Solution 28, page 86.)

Date	: 5 December 199x.	Morning twilight sight of the planet Mars.
DR	: Lat 15° 15' N, Long 80° 40' E.	Course: 270°T 5 knots.
Time	: 00h07m16s UTC per clock. (Local time approx 05h30)	
Clock error	: 15 seconds fast.	Sextant : 85°21,3'. Bearing from compass : +/- 260° T.
Dip	: 3,5m above sea level.	IE : 2,6' 'on'.

#### **EXAMPLE 29.** You try this one. See Solution 29 (in 'Solutions' in Part 2) which uses the Sine/Cosine method.

Date, 30 August, DR 38°20' N, 130°05' W, time of evening sighting of Venus 03h22m53s i.e. on 31 August UTC (but clock error was 24s fast), eye height 2,5 m, Index Error 3,2' off the scale. Sextant Angle 15°42'. Magnetic bearing +/-260°M when Variation was 18° West. Course 200°M, 9 knots, and Log 3456 M. Determine the intercept details (DR/CP Lat/Long, Zn, Intcpt, and Away/Towards).

Why is no navigation planet visible at 05h30 UT on the morning of 28 February 199x from the same DR as above? Answer: 1. Check their LHA's - they will all be below the horizon! (i.e. LHAs between 90° and 270°). 2. At that time and at that DR, 05h30 UT is +/- midday!



Solution 27 to Example 27, page 84.

**AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES WORK SHEET; ALL CELESTIAL BODIES**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: <b>20/6</b> IE: +/- 3,7' ( <del>On</del> , +Off); Eye Ht: <b>4,5</b> m; Clock error: h m -4s (Fast/Slow?)			
Course: <b>320</b> ° T/M/C; Speed: <b>5</b> kns; Celestial Body/ies-UL/LL: <b>Venus / Jupiter?</b>			
DR Lat	<b>30° 25' N/S</b>	<b>30° 25' N/S</b>	° 'N/S
DR Long	<b>26° 10' E/W</b>	<b>26° 10' E/W</b>	° 'E/W
Chosen Lat	<b>30° 00,0' N/S</b>	<b>30° 00,0' N/S</b>	° 00,0' N/S
<b>TIME</b> Clock time of sight	<b>19 h 07m 36 s</b>	<b>19 h 07m 36 s</b>	h m s
Clock error relative to UTC (-fast, + slow) ±	h m -4s	h m -4s	h m s
<b>Corrected UTC time of sight</b> =	<b>19 h 07m 32 s</b>	<b>19 h 07m 32 s</b>	h m s
<b>LHA</b> GHA as at day, hr of sight: Al'nac	<b>64° 25,8'</b>	<b>340° 39,2'</b>	° ' , '
Increments for mins/secs; Yellow pages +	<b>1° 53,0'</b>	<b>1° 53,0'</b>	° ' , '
v (?) ± Plnts; +Moon. Corr.(Yellow p's) ±	<b>(-0,6) -0,1'</b>	<b>(2,6) +0,3'</b>	( ) , , '
Total GHA as at exact time of sight =	<b>66° 18,7'</b>	<b>342° 32,5'</b>	° ' , '
-360° if nec; GHA to be between 0°/ 360° -	° 00,0'	° 00,0'	° 00,0'
GHA Required =	° ' , '	° ' , '	° ' , '
SHA of star +	° ' , '	° ' , '	° ' , '
GHA of celestial body sighted =	<b>66° 18,7'</b>	<b>342° 32,5'</b>	° ' , '
Chosen Longitude (+E, -W) ±	<b>-26° 18,7'</b>	<b>-26° 32,5'</b>	° ' , '
LHA Required =	<b>40° 00,0'</b>	<b>316° 00,0'</b>	° 00,0'
+/- 360° if necessary ±	° 00,0'	° 00,0'	° 00,0'
<b>LHA of celestial body sighted</b> =	<b>40° 00,0'</b>	<b>316° 00,0'</b>	° 00,0'
<b>Declination</b> day/hr of sight; next to GHA =	<b>N/S 20° 34,5'</b>	<b>N/S 12° 00,3'</b>	N/S ° ' , '
(d = ?) factor; bottom of/or in moon column	(d = -0,7)	(d = 0,0)	(d = , , )
d Corr.; Yellow p's (mins) (+if Dec incr'ng) ±	<b>-0,1'</b>	<b>0,0'</b>	° ' , '
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b> at time of sight =	<b>N/S 20° 34,4'</b>	<b>N/S 12° 00,3'</b>	N/S ° ' , '
Lat/Dec <b>SAME</b> or <b>CONTRARY</b> (N/S) ?	<b>Contrary</b>	<b>Same</b>	
<b>Hc:</b> Hc, Sight Red Tables, 'C Lat' page:	<b>* 26° 54'</b>	<b>45° 30'</b>	° ' , '
(d ± ?) Use with Dec's mins, Table 5.	(d = -47)	(d = +31)	(d = +/- )
d Correction, from Table 5 ±	<b>-27'</b>	<b>0'</b>	° ' , '
<b>TOTAL Hc</b> (Transfer to Intercept, ↓) =	<b>26° 27'</b>	<b>45° 30'</b>	° ' , '
<b>Z → Zn</b> Top/bottom left corner SRT page.	<b>Z = 137°</b> <b>Zn = 317°</b>	<b>Z = 104°</b> <b>Zn = 076°</b>	<b>Z = °</b> <b>Zn = °</b>
<b>Ho;</b> Sextant Angle (SA/Hs) Up./Low. Limb =	<b>* Wrong!</b>	<b>45° 11,8'</b>	° ' , '
IE (-On, +Off) ±	<b>Must be</b>	<b>+3,7'</b>	° ' , '
DIP (Eye ht; Al'nac card/Page A2) -	<b>Jupiter →</b>	<b>-3,7'</b>	° ' , '
Apparant Altitude (AA) =	<b>(Hc and</b>	<b>45° 11,8'</b>	° ' , '
Main corm (Al'nac card), OR ±	<b>SA should</b>	<b>-1,0'</b>	° ' , '
Moon corm (Back of Al'nac) +	<b>be ± the</b>	° ' , '	° ' , '
Planet corm (Al'nac card) +	<b>same.)</b>	° ' , '	° ' , '
Moon HP corm (Back of Al'nac) +		° ' , '	° ' , '
Moon only, if UL, corm (-30,0' if UL) -		° ' , '	° ' , '
<b>TRUE ALTITUDE / Ho</b> Ho =	° ' , '	<b>45° 10,8'</b>	° ' , '
<b>Intercept:</b> Ho - Hc or Hc - Ho Hc =	° ' , 0'	<b>45° 30,0'</b>	° ' , 0'
Intcpt (Difference); ~	° ' , 0'	<b>19,2'</b>	° ' , 0'
TOWARDS or AWAY? If Ho > Hc, Towards		<b>Away</b>	

**WORK SHEET FOR USE WITH ALMANAC'S SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: <u>5/12 DR 15° 15' N/S, 80° 40' E/W</u> ; IE <u>2, 6'</u> on/off; Eye ht: <u>3, 50'</u> m; Body <u>Mars</u> UL/LL		
Course <u>270° T/MC</u> , Speed <u>5</u> knots. Clock error to UTC h m <u>-15</u> s (-fast, +slow?),		
Sight clock time <u>00 h 07 m 16</u> s, Sight Time Corrected to UTC(GMT) <u>00 h 07 m 01</u> s.		
<b>Ho</b>	↓ → Apparent Altitude (AA)	<u>85° 15, 5'</u>
Sextant Angle (Hs)	Main Correction (Al'nac card) or (+/-) Moon Correction, back of Al'nac (+)	<u>85° 21, 3'</u> <u>- 0, 1</u> <u>0, 0'</u>
Index Error +/-	Planet Correction (Almanac card)(+)	<u>- 2, 6'</u> <u>NIL</u>
DIP (Height of eye) (-)	Moon HP Corr'n (Back of Al'nac) (+)	<u>- 3, 2'</u> <u>0, 0'</u>
Apparent Altitude (AA)	↑ Moon UL Corr'n (-30.0' only if UL) (-)	<u>85° 15, 5' →</u> <u>0, 0'</u>
Yachtmaster Ocean Services		<b>True Altitude (Ho)</b>
		<u>85° 15, 4'</u>
<b>DECLINATION</b>		
'Dec' as at day, hour of sight; Almanac.	<u>N/S 14° 30, 8'</u>	Increasing/Decreasing* hourly?
(d = ? at bottom of Dec column in Al'nac)	(d <u>0, 2</u> )	Not part of sum. See next line.
d Corr'n, Yellow p's, Mins (time of sight)	<u>+ 0, 0'</u>	*+ if Dec increasing, - if decreasing
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b>	<u>N/S 14° 31, 0'</u>	Rounded off - nearest whole minute
<b>Chosen Latitude</b>	<u>15° 00, 0' N/S</u>	DR Lat rounded off, nearest degree
<b>SAME or CONTRARY ?</b>	<u>Same</u>	Dec and Lat, SAME hemisphere?
<b>LHA</b>		
GHA (hr) Cel'stial Body, Al'nac	<u>282° 29, 4'</u>	Date page, choose body's name column. Yellow p's; NB: Use correct column heading. Bottom of Planet column; or Moon, next to GHA; treat as d for Dec Corr'n, Yellow p's. Sum of above lines. GHA must be between 0° and 360°. GHA: angle, 0° westward, to meridian of GP. Almanac, left day page, right hand column. Omit this and above line if not for a star. DR degrees; mins to make LHA whole number. Angle, your meridian west to meridian of GP. LHA to be between 0° and 360°. Now we can start with the Sight Redn. Tables.
Increment, for mins/secs. +	<u>1° 45, 3'</u>	
v:( factor) +/- Planets;	<u>4 0, 2'</u>	
+Moon. Corr'n= +/-	<u>0, 0'</u>	
Total GHA =	<u>284° 14, 9'</u>	
- 360° if above line >360° -	<u>00 0, 0'</u>	
Total GHA if different. =	<u>0, 0'</u>	
SHA of Star +	<u>0, 0'</u>	
GHA of Celestial Body =	<u>284° 14, 9'</u>	
Chosen Longitude (+E, -W) +/-	<u>+80° 45, 1'</u>	
LHA of Celestial Body =	<u>365° 00, 0'</u>	
+/- 360° if necessary	<u>360° 00, 0'</u>	
LHA Required =	<u>5° 00, 0'</u>	
<b>USE OF SIGHT REDUCTION TABLE (SRT)</b>		
<i>By Henton Jaaback</i>		
1. Select SRT page with above 'Chosen Lat' Under Lat, opposite LHA (as above): <u>A° = 5°</u> (nearest whole degree), <u>A = 50'</u> <u>B = 74° 57'</u> , <u>Z1 = 88, 7'</u> (B/Z1 if 90° < LHA < 270°)	3. Go to Auxiliary Table (pages 316/317). Under F' column opposite P° in left column, what is: <u>Corrn 1 ? + 5, 0'</u> ('-' if F° < 90° and F° > 29°, or if F° > 90° and F' < 30'. Otherwise '+')	
Dec = <u>+ 14° 31' N/S</u> ('+' SAME, '-' CONTRARY) F = <u>+ 89° 28'</u> (F° = <u>+ 89°</u> [nearest degree], F' = <u>28'</u> )	4. Under A' column, opposite Z2 (right hand column), what is <u>Corrn 2 ? + 10, 0'</u> ('-' if A' < 30°)	
2. SRT page with A° value as column heading. Under A° opposite F°: <u>H = 84° 54, 0'</u> <u>P° = 11°</u> (nearest whole degree), <u>Z2 = 11, 3°</u>		
H = <u>84° 54, 0'</u> Z1 = <u>88, 7°</u> + or - as for B. Corrn 1 = <u>+ 5, 0'</u> Z2 = <u>11, 3°</u> (if F° '-'; use 180° - Z2). Corrn 2 = <u>+ 10, 0'</u> (Z2 is '-' if F° > 90°). Hc = <u>85° 09, 0'</u> Z = <u>100, 2°</u> ignore '-' Ho = <u>85° 15, 4'</u> if applic. Intcpt = <u>6, 4'</u>	<b>IF DR in N LAT:</b> If LHA > 180° Zn = Z If LHA < 180° Zn = 360° - Z <b>IF DR in S LAT:</b> If LHA > 180° Zn = 180° - Z If LHA < 180° Zn = 180° + Z	
<b>TOWARDS</b> if Ho > Hc, <b>AWAY</b> if Hc > Ho	<u>Zn = 260° T</u> (Rounded off to nearest degree.)	

**Stars**

There are countless stars in the heavens but navigators only use some of the more prominent ones of which there are 57. Stars appear to occupy 'fixed' positions in the skies relative to each other - we regard them to be almost static as if painted on the inside of a very big ball - the celestial sphere of which earth is its centre. Just as we have an equator and meridians for navigation convenience on earth, we have a celestial equator and celestial meridians to aid charting our way around the heavens.

A belt 8° N to 8° S of the celestial equator is called the Zodiac which we have all heard of. Each star, whether in the Zodiac or not, can be 'pin-pointed' if its declination and longitude are known. We already know that declination means the angle measured at the centre of the earth in a vertical (north-south) plane between the equator and a line to the centre of the celestial body. The earth spinning on its axis has the Greenwich Meridian as a longitude reference while the celestial sphere remains static and has its own equivalent reference meridian, the 'First Point of Aries' or now just called 'Aries'. We use the symbol '♈' for Aries.

The celestial longitude of a star is stated as a number of degrees west of Aries, from 0° to 360° . This of course differs from our system on earth where we think in terms of being a number of degrees , up to 180°, east or west of Greenwich (the Greenwich Meridian).

Hour Angles we saw are also measured 0° to 360° west of Greenwich and so it is with stars - we think of the angle between the celestial meridians of the star and of Aries as an Hour Angle, just as we do for GHA and LHA. Our star hour angle is called the 'Sidereal Hour Angle' (SHA), and the stars used for navigation are listed in your Almanac in alphabetical order with their respective SHAs and Decs.

122 199· JUNE 18, 19, 20 (SAT., SUN., MON.)

UT (GMT)	ARIES		VENUS -4.0		MARS +1.2		JUPITER -2.3		SATURN +0.9		STARS		
	G.H.A.	Dec.	G.H.A.	Dec.	G.H.A.	Dec.	G.H.A.	Dec.	G.H.A.	Dec.	Name	S.H.A.	Dec.
18 00	266 00.4	140 03.0	219 45.6	N16 47.2	52 47.7	S12 01.7	281 34.1	31.8	Acamar	315 29.5	S40 19.5		
01	281 02.9	155 03.3	234 46.3	47.7	67 50.3	01.7	296 37.0	31.8	Achernar	335 37.6	S57 15.6		
02	296 05.3	170 02.7	249 46.9	48.3	82 52.9	01.7	311 39.5	31.8	Acrux	173 25.1	S63 04.5		
03	311 07.8	185 02.1	264 47.6	48.8	97 55.4	01.7	326 41.9	31.8	Adhara	255 24.1	S28 58.0		
04	326 10.3	200 01.5	279 48.2	49.3	112 58.0	01.6	341 44.3	31.8	Aldebaran	291 06.1	N16 29.8		

Table 18. ALMANAC: GHA ARIES AND STARS' DETAILS LIST

To get the GHA of a star we look up the GHA of Aries in the Almanac (left column next to "hours" on the left page and increment in the yellow pages under the Aries column). We then add the SHA which we get from the right-hand column of the left page. The total of the two is the GHA of the star. If we now add our easterly (or subtract our westerly) longitude, we get the LHA (of the star) - just the same as we did for the sun, moon and planets.

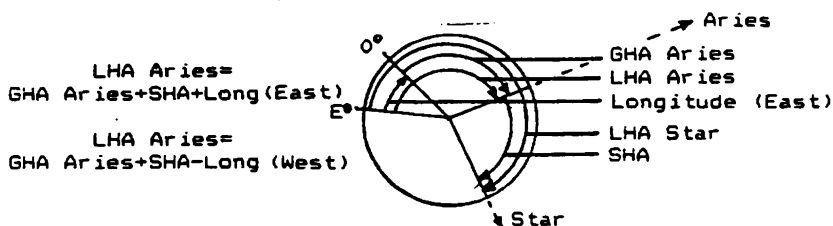


Fig. 58. LHA STAR FROM GHA ARIES AND SHA STAR

Once we have the LHA Star, and knowing the Chosen Lat and Long, and the Dec, we can find Hc and Zn. This can be done the same way as we did for the sun, moon, and planets.

Converting the sextant angle (SA or Hs) to a True Altitude (Ho) involves the only other variation when compared with a sun sight. The steps are the same but after getting the AA (Apparent Altitude), we get the 'main correction' from the middle section of the Almanac's card 'ALTITUDE CORRECTION TABLES 10°-90° -SUN, STARS, PLANETS'. The card detail is also printed on a page in the front of the Almanac in case the card gets lost!

Once we have Hc, Ho, and therefore the intercept, Zn, etc., we can plot the LOP.

**BUT WHAT IF WE DO NOT KNOW ONE STAR FROM ANOTHER?**

Relax! Help is on the way. I don't know which is which, either!

**7 SELECTED STARS' - AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES**

Without doubt the easiest way to 'do' stars, the Air Navigation tables 'Publication No 249 Volume 1', 'SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES FOR AIR NAVIGATION (SELECTED STARS)' do not require the navigator to 'know' his stars. Instead, the names of the stars are revealed during the calculation process so you can go up on deck after getting your fix and make 'casual' comments to the effect that 'Acrux, Deneb and Regulus make a nice cocked hat tonight' - someone in the crew is bound to be impressed with the thought of having an astronomer (you!) on board.

To use these tables we need to know:

- a. Chosen Lat.
- b. LHA Aries.
- c. Ho.
- d. The true bearing to the star (Azimuth).

The procedure is simply to look up into the sky and pick out one of the brightest stars (not a planet). Take your sextant sight, noting the sextant angle, time AND the magnetic bearing to the star. This magnetic bearing is converted to 'True' by subtracting the (westerly) magnetic variation (add if variation east).

The sextant angle is converted to Ho as we did for the sun, moon and planets. We get the main correction from the centre column of the Almanac card (page 7, Table 1.).

From the time of the sight we can use the Almanac to find the GHA Aries and then apply our longitude to get LHA Aries.

Our DR Lat is rounded off to the nearest whole number of degrees to become our chosen latitude (C Lat).

We then go to the tables and open them to the facing pages for our C Lat. Each page has two vertically arranged halves for 90° of the possible 360° LHAs. Find the required LHA in the left column and look in the adjacent 7 columns to the right - one will have an Hc and Zn very close to the Ho and True bearing you obtained. At the top of that section of the column containing the matching Hc and Zn you will see the name of a star - Bingo!

**LAT 33°S**

LHA °P	Hc Zn	Hc Zn	Hc Zn	Hc Zn	Hc Zn	Hc Zn	Hc Zn
	<b>VEGA</b>	<b>ALTAIR</b>	<b>*FOMALHAUT</b>	<b>ACHERNAR</b>	<b>*RIGIL KENT.</b>	<b>ANTARES</b>	<b>*Rasalhague</b>
270	17 43 007	40 36 037	27 51 109	15 45 149	47 28 214	69 11 282	44 02 351
271	17 50 007	41 06 036	28 39 109	16 11 149	47 00 214	68 21 281	43 53 350
272	17 55 006	41 35 035	29 26 108	16 37 149	46 32 214	67 32 281	43 44 349
273	18 00 005	42 04 034	30 14 108	17 04 148	46 04 214	66 43 280	43 34 347
274	18 04 004	42 31 032	31 02 107	17 30 148	45 36 214	65 53 279	43 22 346
275	18 07 003	42 58 031	31 50 107	17 57 148	45 07 215	65 03 278	43 09 345
276	18 10 003	43 23 030	32 38 107	18 24 147	44 38 215	64 13 277	42 55 343
277	18 12 002	43 48 029	33 27 106	18 51 147	44 10 215	63 23 276	42 41 342
278	18 13 001	44 12 027	34 15 106	19 19 147	43 41 215	62 33 276	42 25 341
279	18 14 000	44 34 026	35 04 105	19 47 146	43 12 215	61 43 275	42 08 340
280	18 13 359	44 56 025	35 52 105	20 15 146	42 43 215	60 53 274	41 49 338
281	18 12 358	45 17 024	36 41 105	20 43 146	42 14 215	60 03 274	41 30 337
282	18 11 358	45 36 022	37 29 104	21 11 146	41 45 215	59 13 273	41 10 336
283	18 08 357	45 55 021	38 18 104	21 40 145	41 16 215	58 22 272	40 49 335
284	18 05 356	46 12 020	39 07 103	22 09 145	40 46 215	57 32 272	40 27 333
	<b>ALTAIR</b>	<b>Enif</b>	<b>*FOMALHAUT</b>	<b>ACHERNAR</b>	<b>*RIGIL KENT.</b>	<b>ANTARES</b>	<b>*Rasalhague</b>
285	46 29 018	32 06 050	39 56 103	22 38 145	40 17 216	56 42 271	40 04 332
286	46 44 017	32 44 049	40 45 103	23 07 144	39 48 216	55 51 271	39 40 331
287	46 58 015	33 22 048	41 34 102	23 36 144	39 19 216	55 01 270	39 16 330
288	47 11 014	33 59 047	42 24 102	24 06 144	38 49 216	54 11 270	38 50 329
289	47 22 013	34 35 046	43 13 102	24 35 144	38 20 216	53 20 269	38 24 328

Table 19. A SECTION FROM 'STARS' SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES

The difference between Hc and Ho is our intercept and the Zn is the direction to be used when plotting.

By sighting three\* stars at about 120° apart in direction, and each being the brightest in its area, all within a few minutes of one another, we can get our cocked hat and therefore our fix - no advancing or transferring LOPs being involved, and no hours of waiting between taking sights.

\* **Warning:** It may happen that one or two of the brightest stars you chose are not in fact from the seven listed for the LHA/time of your sights. It is therefore wise to take sights of a few extra - say six or seven altogether. Then you will be certain to get three of the seven as listed in the Sight Reduction Tables.

### Planning Star Sights

Some navigators like to know in advance which stars they are going to use for taking sights. By knowing in what direction and height to look for the stars, no time will be wasted during the limited twilight period in deciding which stars to use. Planning will also avoid the remote possibility of one or more of the stars sighted not being among the seven!

### The Procedure

Before twilight, calculate your DR as at the approximate time you think twilight will start. Then look up the Almanac to find out the time of sunset/sunrise and civil twilight at Greenwich - midway between sunset and civil twilight, or civil twilight and sunrise, will be the best time to plan for sight taking, if your DR is on the Greenwich Meridian. Convert your DR longitude to time (Arc to Time table - first of the yellow pages in the Almanac, or Table 3, page 17.) and if you are east subtract (add if west) this time from the Greenwich mid twilight, and you will have the UTC time of mid twilight at your DR.

Using this time look up the GHA Aries and apply your DR Long to get the LHA Aries.

Now open the Air Sight Reduction Tables - Seven Selected Stars, to the two facing pages labelled with the same 'Lat' as your chosen latitude and find the LHA value in one of the four LHA columns. To the right of the LHA are seven columns, each headed with a star's name and three of these have a diamond shape printed next to the name. These three are the stars recommended - they will be easy to find, brighter than surrounding stars and in directions that will result in a suitably shaped cocked hat - one which will make it easy for the navigator to find the centre, the 'fix' position.

The three stars' Hc's and Zn's can now be noted. Each Zn can be converted to a magnetic bearing and the Hc's used as the approximate sextant angles to find the stars when they become visible.

**HINT:** Take the sights of stars in the east first - they are the first to become visible at sunset and the first to disappear from view at sunrise.

**(Star Finder.** An alternative method of planning the taking of star sights is to use a "Star Finder and Identifier" - a set of round clear plastic discs and one white base disc. They are designed to be a quick, easy way of finding the approximate altitude and azimuth of any one of the 57 stars at a time and from a place. They are purchased with very easy to understand instructions how to use them.)

**EXAMPLE 30.** Now we will do an example. The date is 30 August 199x and DR at 16h00 LMT (local mean time) is 15°25' N, 130°25'W. What stars are the recommended stars for this evening's twilight, when will twilight start and end (UTC), and in which direction and at what height will each star be found?

The first fact we need to establish is 'time'. As our longitude is 130° 25'W, the time difference to GMT will be 8 hours 42 minutes behind (to the nearest minute). So when twilight starts at 0° Long/Greenwich (it will start with sunset at 18h14 - by interpolation), where we are we add our time equivalent of our west longitude, so it will be + 8h42, i.e. 26h56 = 02h56 UTC on 31 August!. Civil twilight lasts approximately 23 minutes so it will be from 02h56 to 03h19 UTC. If our sights are taken in the middle of twilight (average) they will be at approximately 03h07 UTC. So our LHA will be:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{GHA Aries hour value} & = & 24^{\circ}04,0' \\ \text{Increment} \quad m \quad s & + & \underline{1^{\circ}45,3'} \\ \text{GHA Aries} & = & \underline{25^{\circ}49,3, \quad '} \end{array}$$

To get LHA, being west, we subtract our longitude (DR Long with minutes changed to result in whole





**WORK SHEET FOR STAR SIGHTS: AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES (SRTs): 7 SELECTED STARS**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date _____, DR ° 'N/S, ° 'E/W, CHOSEN LAT: °00' N/S. IE ' 'on'/off. Ht of eye ft/m,									
Clock error relative to UTC.....h.....m.....s (-fast,+slow), Course °T, Speed Kns, Log Miles.									
<b>Star Sight Planning</b> (Almanac.) Twilight on the Greenwich Meridian (0° Longitude):									
<u>Morning Twilight:</u> Civil Twilight starts at	h	m	Almanac, date page (right side), then estimate for your DR Lat.						
Sunrise is at	h	m							
Average of these times is mid twilight =	h	m	* For use in the next box down.						
<u>Evening Twilight:</u> Sunset is at	h	m	Almanac, date page (right side), then estimate for your DR Lat.						
Civil Twilight ends at	h	m							
Average of these times is mid twilight =	h	m	* For use in the next box down.						
<b>Best Time to take twilight sights: (and LHA) (Almanac.)</b>									
Middle of twilight at Greenwich in UT	+	h	m	* From above determination.					
DR Long converted to time; - E, + W	±	h	m	Almanac, first Yellow page, 'Arc to Time'.					
Take sights at approximately	=	h	m	UT of mid twilight at your DR.					
GHA Aries as at the hour of taking sights		°	'	Almanac, date page, left side.					
Increment for mins (0 seconds) of sight	+	°	'	Al'nac, Yellow page for mins, opp 0 secs.					
Total GHA Aries at time of mid twilight	=	°	'	Sum of above two lines.					
+ E, - W Chosen Longitude	±	°	'	DR Long's mins are changed so LHA is a whole number of degrees, zero minutes.					
LHA Aries (+/- 360°if nec)	=	°	00 , 0'						
<b>Best Stars to Sight and their Locations (SRTs.)</b>									
Three Stars' names with ◆ shapes									
Hc (as expected by tables/calculation)	°	'	'						
Zn (true direction to stars, as per Tables)	°T	°T	°T						
<b>Actual Sights' Data: (Almanac.)</b>									
Clock time of sight	h	m	s	h	m	s	h	m	s
Clock error to UTC/GMT (+ slow, - fast) ±	h	m	s	h	m	s	h	m	s
UTC (GMT) of sight =	h	m	s	h	m	s	h	m	s
Direction bearing to star converted to True			°T			°T			°T
GHA Aries at hour of sight	°	'	'	°	'	'	°	'	'
Increment of GHA for mins and secs	+	°	'	°	'	'	°	'	'
Total GHA Aries	=	°	'	°	'	'	°	'	'
- 360° if necessary	-	°	00 , 0'	°	00 , 0'	0'	°	00 , 0'	0'
GHA Aries required	=	°	'	°	'	'	°	'	'
Chosen Longitude (+ E, - W)	±	°	'	°	'	'	°	00 , 0'	0'
LHA	=	°	00 , 0'	°	00 , 0'	0'	°	00 , 0'	0'
+/- 360° if necessary	±	°	00 , 0'	°	00 , 0'	0'	°	00 , 0'	0'
LHA Aries Required	=	°	00 , 0'	°	00 , 0'	0'	°	00 , 0'	0'
<b>From Sight Reduction Tables for Stars: (SRTs.)</b>									
Hc as per time of sight, at Chosen Posn.	°	'	'	°	'	'	°	'	'
Zn for plotting direction/compass check.	°T	°T	°T	°T	°T	°T	°T	°T	°T
<b>True Altitude (TA/Ho) and Intercept: (Almanac.)</b>									
Sextant Angle (SA or Hs) taken at sight	°	'	'	°	'	'	°	'	'
Index Error ±	±	°	'	±	°	'	±	°	'
DIP	-	°	'	-	°	'	-	°	'
Apparent Altitude (AA)	=	°	'	=	°	'	=	°	'
Star Correction	-	°	'	-	°	'	-	°	'
True Altitude Ho =	=	°	'	=	°	'	=	°	'
<u>Intercept:</u> Hc =	=	°	0'	=	°	0'	=	°	0'
Ho - Hc or Hc - Ho, Intercept (difference)=	=	°	'	=	°	'	=	°	'
Towards or Away? (Towards if Ho>Hc)									

Work Sheet 6. STAR SIGHTS USING 'STAR TABLES' FOR SEVEN SELECTED STARS.



Solution 30 to Example 30, pages 89 and 90.

**WORK SHEET FOR STAR SIGHTS: AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES (SRTs): 7 SELECTED STARS**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date 30 Aug, DR 15° 25' N / 130° 25' W, CHOSEN LAT: 15° 00' N. IE 3.5' on/off. Ht of eye 4 M, Clock error relative to UTC h m +6 s (~~fast~~, +slow) Course 130° T, Speed 5 Kns, Log 77.69 M.

**Star Sight Planning** (Almanac.) Twilight on the Greenwich Meridian (0° Longitude):

<b>Morning Twilight:</b> Civil Twilight starts at	h m	Almanac, date page (right side), then estimate for your DR Lat.
Sunrise is at	h m	
Average of these times is mid twilight =	h m	* For use in the next box down.
<b>Evening Twilight:</b> Sunset is at	18 h 14 m	Almanac, date page (right side), then estimate for your DR Lat.
Civil Twilight ends at	18 h 36 m	* For use in the next box down.
Average of these times is mid twilight =	18 h 25 m	

**Best Time to take twilight sights:** (and LHA) (Almanac.)

Middle of twilight at Greenwich in UT	+	18 h 25 m	* From above determination.
DR Long converted to time; <del>E</del> , + W	±	8 h 42 m	Almanac, first Yellow page, 'Arc to Time'.
Take sights at approximately * <u>31/Aug</u>	=	* 03 h 07 m	UT of mid twilight at your DR.
GHA Aries as at the hour of taking sights		24° 04.0'	Almanac, date page, left side.
Increment for mins (0 seconds) of sight	+	1° 45.3'	Al'nac, Yellow page for mins, opp 0 secs.
Total GHA Aries at time of mid twilight	=	25° 49.3'	Sum of above two lines.
+ E, - W Chosen Longitude	±	-130° 49.3'	DR Long's mins are changed so LHA is a whole number of degrees, zero minutes.
LHA Aries (+/- 360° if nec) + <u>360°</u>	=	255° 00.0'	

**Best Stars to Sight and their Locations** (SRTs.)

Three Stars' names with ♦ shapes	VEGA	Nunki	ARCTURUS
Hc (as expected by tables/calculation)	58° 08'	40° 10'	50° 29'
Zn (true direction to stars, as per Tables)	037 °T	146 °T	282 °T

**Actual Sights' Data:** (Almanac.)

Clock time of sight	03 h 07 m 18 s	03 h 09 m 28 s	03 h 11 m 46 s
Clock error to UTC/GMT (+ slow, - fast) ±	h m +6 s	h m +6 s	h m +6 s
UTC (GMT) of sight =	03 h 07 m 24 s	03 h 09 m 34 s	03 h 11 m 52 s
Direction bearing to star converted to True	035 °T	145 °T	280 °T
GHA Aries at hour of sight	24° 04.0'	24° 04.0'	24° 04.0'
Increment of GHA for mins and secs +	1° 51.3'	2° 23.9'	2° 58.5'
Total GHA Aries =	25° 55.3'	26° 27.9'	27° 02.5'
- 360° if necessary	° 00.0'	° 00.0'	° 00.0'
GHA Aries required =	25° 55.3'	26° 27.9'	27° 02.5'
Chosen Longitude (+ E, - W) ±	-130° 55.3'	-130° 27.9'	-130° 02.5'
LHA =	-105° 00.0'	-104° 00.0'	-103° 00.0'
+/- 360° if necessary ±	+360° 00.0'	+360° 00.0'	+360° 00.0'
LHA Aries Required =	255° 00.0'	256° 00.0'	257° 00.0'

**From Sight Reduction Tables for Stars:** (SRTs.)

Hc as per time of sight, at Chosen Posn.	58° 08'	40° 42'	48° 36'
Zn for plotting direction/compass check.	037 °T	147 °T	282 °T

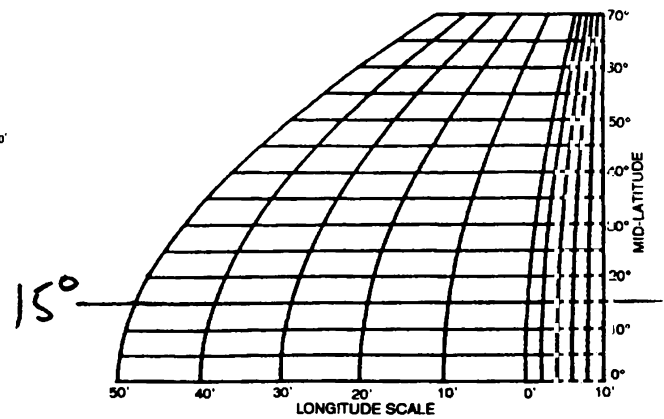
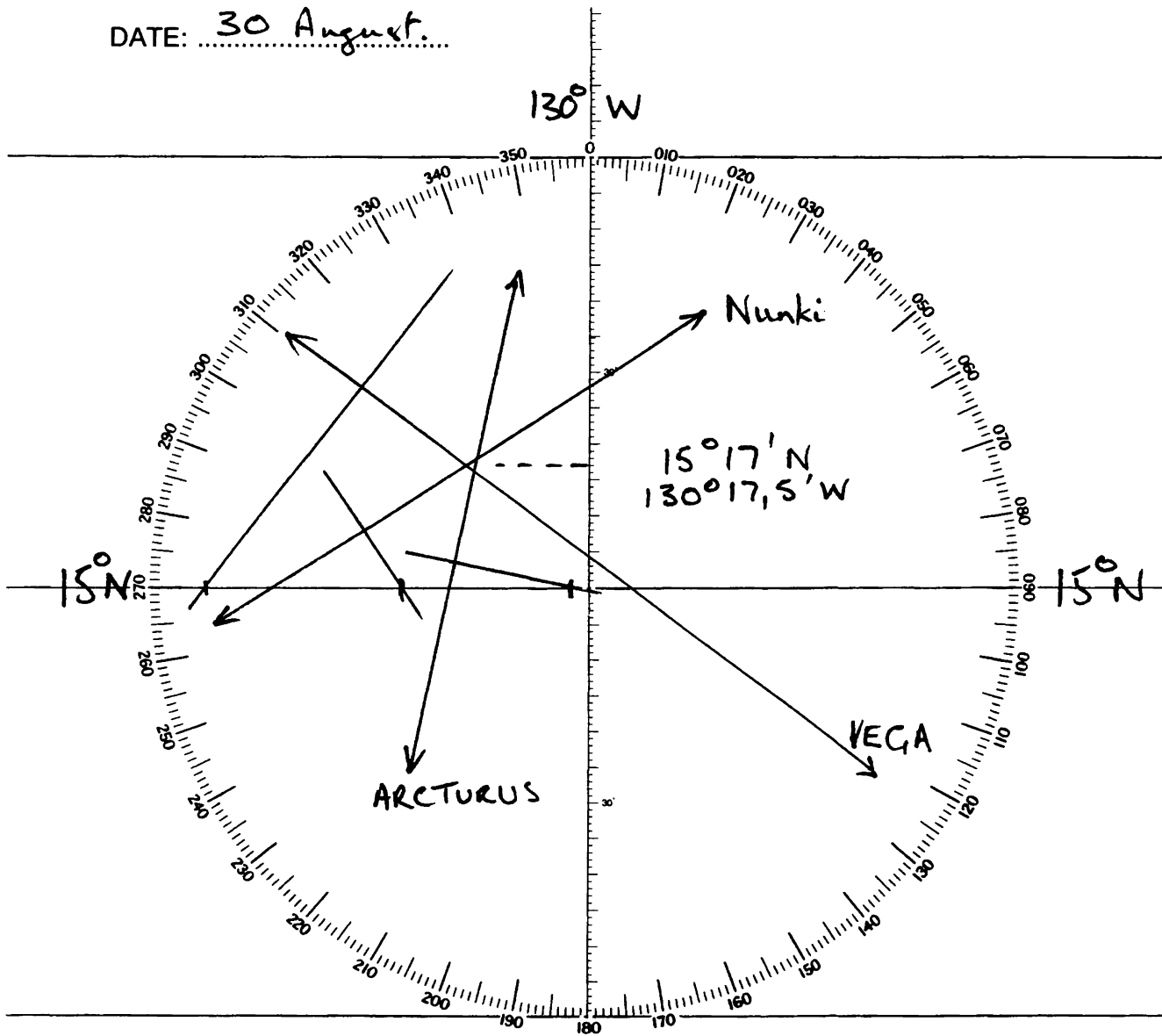
**True Altitude (TA/Ho) and Intercept:** (Almanac.)

Sextant Angle (SA or Hs) taken at sight	58° 50.5'	40° 40.6'	49° 00.1'
Index Error ±	-3.5'	-3.5'	-3.5'
DIP -	-3.5'	-3.5'	-3.5'
Apparent Altitude (AA) =	58° 43.5'	40° 33.6'	48° 53.1'
Star Correction -	-0.6'	-1.1'	-0.8'
True Altitude Ho =	58° 42.9'	40° 32.5'	48° 52.3'
Intercept Hc =	58° 08.0'	40° 42.0'	48° 36.0'
Ho - Hc or Hc - Ho, (difference) Intercept =	34.9'	9.5'	16.3'
Towards or Away? (Towards if Ho > Hc)	Towards	Away	Towards

Solution 30 (Plotting)

**PLOTTING OF STAR SIGHTS: 30/31 AUGUST 199X; EXAMPLE 30**

DATE: 30 August.



 **YACHTMASTER OCEAN SERVICE cc**  
28 YEOVILLE ROAD, VREDEHOEK, CAPE TOWN  
P.O. BOX 12181, MILL STREET 8010  
TELEPHONE: (021) 462-3413 • FAX SERVICE: 45-2097

Solution 30 PLOTTING. THE PLOTTING OF THE STAR SIGHT; EXAMPLE 30.

Had we not done the star-sight planning in advance, we could simply have gone on deck with the sextant, clock and note pad and pencil before sunset and waited for the first stars in the east to become visible. During twilight we could then have taken sights of three (any three, preferably more 'in case') prominent stars as long as each was the brightest in its area of the sky and the three were suitably spaced around the 360° horizon so that the plotted triangle would be as near to equilateral as can be.

The only disadvantage in doing it this way is that sometimes one or two of the stars used may not be as per the '7 Selected Stars'. That, or those, sights are then useless! To overcome this problem, some navigators take sights on more than just three stars - maybe up to six, thereby ensuring that at least three will be among the seven listed for the appropriate LHA(s).

For the navigator who is able to look into the night sky and identify the individual stars, the work-sheet method as used for the sun, moon, and planets can be used. The only variation is the inclusion of "SHA Star" from the Almanac to be added to the GHA Aries to get "GHA Star". By knowing which star one is looking at, one knows which star's SHA to look up in the Almanac. If one can not easily identify stars and one does not have a copy of the "Sight Reduction Tables for the 7 Selected Stars", one could use a "Star Finder" or Star Atlas. It is then possible to do all the navigation with ONLY ONE reference book - the Nautical Almanac. Alternatively one can use the standard Air Tables (ONLY if Dec is < 30°).

**EXAMPLE 33.** Let's do an example using the SHA and the standard Air Tables (Volume 2).

Date : 27 February 199x.  
 DR : 38° 05' N, 26° 15' W.  
 IE : 2' "on".  
 DIP : 3 m.  
 Clock error : 2h00m29s fast relative to UTC (GMT).  
 Course : 040 T, 5.5 knots, Log 3579 M.

Sight 1. : Star POLLUX  
 SA(Hs) 49°28,4'  
 Clock Time 21h50m50s

Sight 2. : Star SIRIUS  
 SA(Hs) 27°32,9'  
 Clock Time 21h52m47s

Sight 3. : Star Hamal  
 SA(Hs) 54°30,7'  
 Clock Time 21h55m06s

Check the working on the work sheet over the page, Solution 33 using the AIR SRTs on page 96. We could use the Almanac's Sight Reduction Tables or the Sine/Cosine method. The answers will result in the same L.O.P. Then plot the fix. Your plotting can be compared to the solution in the Solutions section, 'Solution 33 Plotting'.

**EXAMPLE 34.** Now try a star sight on your own: You are the navigator on a cruising vessel approaching the island of Mauritius from the east. The date is 19 June 199x and your vessel's DR is 10°55' S, 80°40' E. It is early morning (still dark) and you decide to get a dawn fix using the stars.

When will civil twilight begin? When is sunrise? Which are the three recommended stars for this fix and where are they to be found (altitude and Azimuth)?

You take three star sights and the applicable detail is as follows:

IE 3,6' "off", height of eye 8 feet. Your navigation clock is set to UTC but is 17 seconds fast.  
 Course 270°T, 6 knots, Log 2468 M.

Sight 1. Sextant Angle 41°57,4', Clock time 00h38m51s,  
 Bearing to the star 045° T

Sight 2. Sextant Angle 39°18,3', Clock time 00h40m20s,  
 Bearing to the star 160° T

Sight 3. Sextant Angle 26°36,2', Clock time 00h42m23s  
 Bearing to the star 285° T

What is the resulting fix position? See Solutions section, Solution 34 (Work Sheet) and Solution 34 (Plotting).

Solution 33 to Example 33, page 95.

**AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES WORK SHEET; ALL CELESTIAL BODIES**

By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc

Date: 27/2 IE: +/- 2,0' (-On, <del>Off</del> ); Eye Ht: 3 m; Clock error: 2 h 00 m 29 s (Fast/Slow?)			
Course: 090 °T/M/C; Speed: 5,5 kns; Celestial Body/ies-UL/LL: Stars:			
Log	POLLUX 3579 M	SIRIUS M	Hamal M
DR Lat	38° 05' N/S	} Same 'N/S 'E/W	Same 'N/S
DR Long	26° 15' E/W		Same 'E/W
Chosen Lat	38° 00' 0"N/S		°00,0'N/S
<b>TIME</b> Clock time of sight	21 h 50 m 50 s	21 h 52 m 47 s	21 h 55 m 06 s
Clock error relative to UTC (-fast, + slow) ±	-2 h 00 m 29 s	-2 h 00 m 29 s	-2 h 00 m 29 s
Corrected UTC time of sight =	19 h 50 m 21 s	19 h 52 m 18 s	19 h 54 m 37 s
<b>LHA</b> GHA as at day, hr of sight: Al'nac	82° 22,8'	82° 22,8'	82° 22,8'
Increments for mins/secs; Yellow pages +	12° 37,3'	13° 06,6'	13° 41,5'
v (?) ± Pints; +Moon. Corn.(Yellow p's) ±	( )	( )	( )
Total GHA as at exact time of sight =	95° 00,1'	95° 29,4'	96° 04,3'
-360° if nec; GHA to be between 0°/ 360° -	°00,0'	°00,0'	°00,0'
GHA Required =	95° 00,1'	95° 29,4'	96° 04,3'
SHA of star +	243° 45,1'	258° 42,2'	328° 17,3'
GHA of celestial body sighted =	338° 45,2'	354° 11,6'	424° 21,6'
Chosen Longitude (+E, -W) ±	-26° 45,2'	-26° 11,6'	-26° 21,6'
LHA Required =	312° 00,0'	328° 00,0'	398° 00,0'
+/- 360° if necessary ±	°00,0'	°00,0'	-360° 00,0'
LHA of celestial body sighted =	312° 00,0'	328° 00,0'	38° 00,0'
<b>Declination</b> day/hr of sight; next to GHA =	N/S ° /	N/S ° /	N/S ° /
(d = ?) factor; bottom off/or in moon colmn	(d = / , )	(d = / , )	(d = / , )
d Corn; Yellow p's (mins) (+if Dec incr'ng) ±			
TOTAL DECLINATION at time of sight =	N/S 28° 02,3'	N/S 16° 42,8'	N/S 23° 26,1'
Lat/Dec SAME or CONTRARY (N/S) ?	Same	Contrary	Same
<b>Hc:</b> Hc, Sight Red Tables, 'C Lat' page:	48° 59'	28° 13'	54° 18'
(d ± ?) Use with Dec's mins, Table 5.	(d = +27)	(d = -53)	(d = +33)
d Correction, from Table 5 ±	+ 1'	-38'	+ 14'
TOTAL Hc (Transfer to Intercept, ↓) =	49° 00'	27° 35'	54° 32'
<b>Z → Zn</b> Top/bottom left corner SRT page.	Z = 90° Zn = 090°	Z = 145° Zn = 145°	Z = 104° Zn = 256°
<b>Ho:</b> Sextant Angle (SA/Hs) Up./Low. Limb =	49° 28,4'	27° 32,9'	54° 30,7'
IE (-On, +Off) ±	-2,0'	-2,0'	-2,0'
DIP (Eye ht; Al'nac card/Page A2) -	-3,0'	-3,0'	-3,0'
Apparant Altitude (AA) =	49° 23,4'	27° 27,9'	54° 25,7'
Main corm (Al'nac card), OR ±	-0,8'	-1,9'	-0,7'
Moon corm (Back of Al'nac) +	°	°	°
Planet corm (Al'nac card) +	°	°	°
Moon HP corm (Back of Al'nac) +	°	°	°
Moon only, if UL, corm (-30,0' if UL) -	°	°	°
TRUE ALTITUDE / Ho Ho =	49° 22,6'	27° 26,0'	54° 25,0'
<b>Intercept:</b> Ho - Hc or Hc - Ho Hc =	49° 00,0'	27° 35,0'	54° 32,0'
Intcpt (Difference); ~	22,6'	9'	7'
TOWARDS or AWAY? If Ho > Hc, Towards	Towards	Away	Away

**Precession and Nutation**

As the earth spins on its axis and progresses on its orbit around the sun, it "wobbles".

**Precession**

The earth's orbit path is not a smooth elliptic curve as it moves in small 'curls'; see Figure 59.

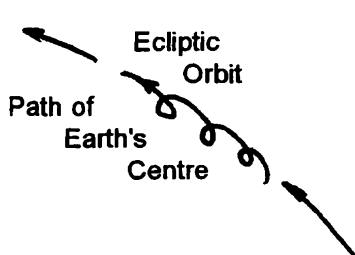


Fig. 59. PRECESSION

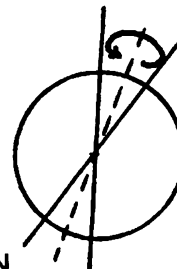


Fig. 60. NUTATION

**Nutation**

The axis of the earth also wobbles, pivoting on its centre so that a plot of the axis at the poles shows the axis moving around a small circle; see Figure 60 above.

**Correction**

Our Tables (Volume 1-"7 Selected Stars") are published every five years with the "Epoch" - the middle year of the five - being stated on the cover. During this Epoch the Tables are correct and no further allowance need be made. Inside the book's back cover are correction tables for other years. Our latitude and the LHA Aries enable us to see from these tables how far and in what direction to advance or transfer our fix obtained from the stars LOPs, to allow for the effects of Precession and Nutation (only for stars as they are so far away.)

A section of the applicable table, 'TABLE 5 - CORRECTION FOR PRECESSION AND NUTATION' is shown below as Table 22. As an example of its use, if we were near the equator (latitude near 0° - say 3°15' S) in the year 19.., we would look down the centre vertical column, under the year concerned, to the row nearest to our LHA for Aries, say 181°. Along the 180° row we see (under 0° for Lat) the numbers " 3' and 290° ". This means that the fix must be moved 3' in the direction 290°T. This change in the fix position will allow for the errors due to Precession and Nutation during the applicable year.

TABLE 5—CORRECTION FOR PRECESSION AND NUTATION

LHA °	North latitudes							0°	South latitudes							LHA °
	N 89°	N 80°	N 70°	N 60°	N 50°	N 40°	N 20°		S 20°	S 40°	S 50°	S 60°	S 70°	S 80°	S 89°	
	<b>19..</b>															
0	1 190	1 210	2 220	2 230	2 240	3 240	3 250	3 250	3 240	2 240	2 230	2 230	1 210	1 200	1 180	0
30	1 220	2 230	2 240	2 240	3 250	3 250	3 250	3 250	3 250	2 240	2 230	1 220	1 200	1 170	1 150	30
60	1 250	2 250	2 260	2 260	3 260	3 260	3 260	3 260	2 260	2 250	1 240	1 220	1 170	1 130	1 110	60
90	1 280	2 270	2 270	2 270	3 270	3 270	3 270	3 270	2 270	1 280	1 280	0	0	1 080	1 080	90
120	1 300	2 300	2 290	2 290	3 290	3 280	3 280	3 280	2 290	2 300	1 300	1 320	1 000	1 030	1 050	120
150	1 330	1 320	2 310	2 300	2 300	3 290	3 290	3 290	3 290	2 300	2 310	1 320	1 340	1 000	1 020	150
180	1 000	1 340	1 330	2 310	2 310	2 300	3 300	3 290	3 290	3 300	2 300	2 310	2 320	1 330	1 350	180
210	1 030	1 010	1 340	1 320	2 310	2 300	3 290	3 290	3 290	3 290	3 290	2 300	2 300	2 310	1 320	210
240	1 070	1 050	1 010	1 320	1 300	2 290	2 280	3 280	3 280	3 280	3 280	2 280	2 280	2 290	1 290	240
270	1 100	1 100	0	0	1 260	1 260	2 270	3 270	3 270	3 270	3 270	2 270	2 270	2 270	1 260	270
300	1 130	1 150	1 180	1 220	1 240	2 240	2 250	3 260	3 260	3 260	3 250	2 250	2 250	2 240	1 240	300
330	1 160	1 180	1 200	1 220	2 230	2 240	3 250	3 250	3 250	3 250	2 240	2 240	2 230	1 220	1 210	330
360	1 190	1 210	2 220	2 230	2 240	3 240	3 250	3 250	3 240	2 240	2 230	2 230	1 210	1 200	1 180	360
	<b>19.. + 1</b>															
0	1 190	1 210	1 220	1 230	2 240	2 240	2 250	2 250	2 240	2 240	1 230	1 230	1 210	1 190	1 170	0
30	1 220	1 230	1 240	2 250	2 250	2 250	2 250	2 250	2 250	1 240	1 230	1 220	1 190	1 160	1 140	30
60	1 250	1 260	1 260	2 260	2 260	2 260	2 260	2 260	2 260	1 250	1 240	0	0	1 120	1 110	60
90	1 280	1 280	1 280	2 270	2 270	2 270	2 270	2 270	2 270	1 280	1 280	0	0	1 080	1 080	90

Table 22.

**NOTES**

## POLARIS

### The Pole Star

This star, Polaris, is without doubt the most useful natural navigation aid to all who sail in the northern hemisphere. It is located (almost) directly over the North Pole. There is, therefore, a permanent 'North' reference to mariners, but more importantly there is also a continuous (by night) ability to check latitude. (This assumes the horizon is adequately visible at night between twilights for the taking of sights - which it seldom is.) The star itself is located in the group of stars known as URSA MINOR (commonly called 'The Little Bear' and although not a bright star with a magnitude of 2,1, it is the brightest of this group and can easily be found at the 'handle' end of the soup-ladle shape formed by the group.

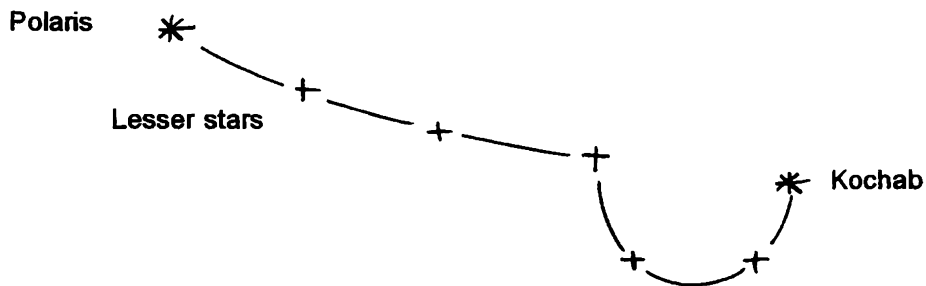


Fig. 61. URSA MINOR AND POLARIS

The more conspicuous group of stars, URSA MAJOR, also forms a spoon shape and the last two, Merak and Dubhe at the opposite end from the handle are known as the 'pointers' as they are almost in line with and point to Polaris. The front cover of your Nautical Almanac shows both groups of stars quite clearly. The URSA MAJOR group have their declinations between approximately 50° North and 63° North.

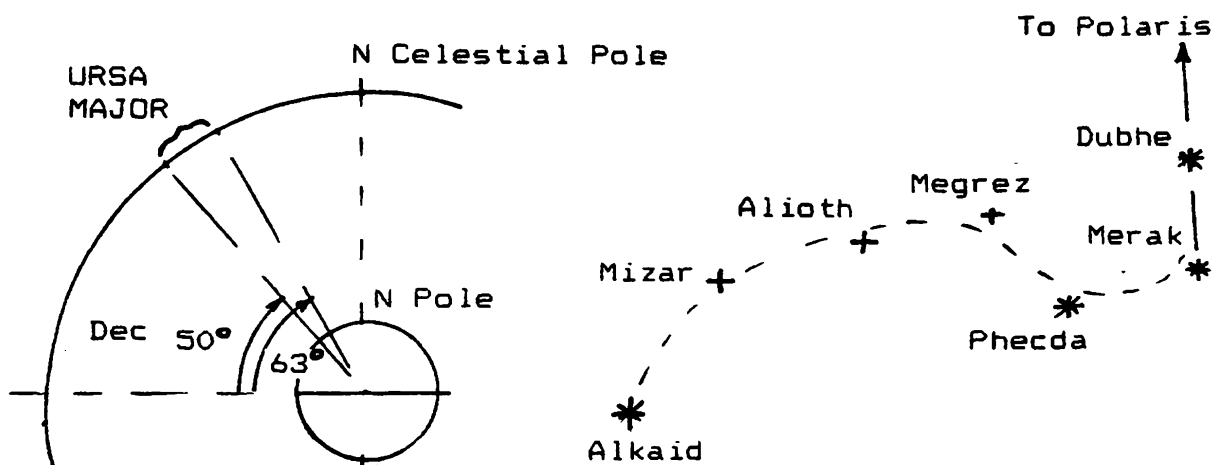
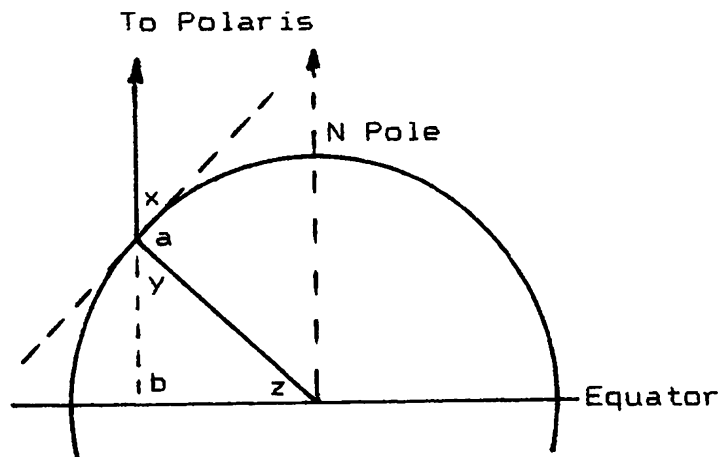


Fig. 62. URSA MAJOR: ITS LOCATION AND APPEARANCE

### The Logic

Polaris is not in fact exactly over the North Pole. It is very nearly but can be up to nearly 2° off the axis. It varies with time and the way the earth 'wobbles'. Luckily the wobble pattern has been computed and adjustments (corrections) are now available in the Almanac. Assume though for the moment that it is directly over the North Pole. Look at Fig. 29 on page 28. The corrected sextant angle from your position (looking north) to the Pole Star will be the same as the angle formed at the earth's centre between the equator and a line from the earth's centre to where you are - which is your latitude:



'a' and 'b' are 90°.  
 'a'+ 'x'+ 'y' = 180°.  
 'b'+ 'y'+ 'z' = 180°.  
 'a' = 'b'  
 'x' = 'z'  
 'x' = SA(Ho)  
 'z' = Lat ,  
 therefore Lat = SA(Ho)

Fig. 63. SEXTANT ANGLE (CORRECTED) SAME AS LATITUDE

**The Procedure**

We all know that the sextant angle needs corrections to become the True Altitude, Ho. Since we want to find the corrected angle knowing that Polaris is NOT EXACTLY over the North Pole, our correction must take this fact into account. To do this we use tables computed for the purpose which we find in the Almanac just before the Sight Reduction Tables section, at pages 274 to 276.

To be able to use the tables, we need to know the LHA Aries as at the time of the sight. By now we know how to do this:

Convert exact time of sight to corrected UTC (GMT).

Using this time, from the Almanac daily pages, find the

GHA Aries (hour value)	°   '   ''	
Increment (mins/secs, '+')	°   '   ''	(Yellow pages)
Total GHA Aries	°   '   ''	
Longitude (+East, -West)	°   '   ''	
+/-360° if necessary	°00,0'	
LHA Aries	°   '   ''	

We can now start to correct the sextant angle:

Sextant angle	°   '   ''
Index error (+/-)	°   '   ''
Dip (-)	°   '   ''
Apparent Altitude	°   '   ''
Main corrn, stars (-)	°   '   ''
Corrected AA = Ho	°   '   ''

To proceed we must now look at the Polaris Tables and select the page (example opposite) with our LHA Aries - note that there are three pages, each having 120° of LHA. Each page has four sections, the top three are for corrections to the 'Ho' to get 'Lat':

1. The first (top) section correction has the symbol 'a<sub>0</sub>' and is only concerned with our LHA Aries.
2. The next section's correction, 'a<sub>1</sub>', is determined by our DR Lat and LHA Aries.
3. The third section is a correction for monthly variations and depends on our LHA Aries. It is called 'a<sub>2</sub>'.

These corrections are '+' because of the way these corrections have been computed using 'constants'. The fact that the constants add up to 1° and the way they have been used in the computation, means that we must finally subtract 1° to get the final answer - our latitude. So the final look at our 'sums'!

Ho		°   '   ''
a <sub>0</sub>	(+)	°   '   ''
a <sub>1</sub>	(+)	°   '   ''
a <sub>2</sub>	(+)	°   '   ''
-1°		-1° 00 ,0'
Latitude (North)	=	°   '   '' N



**POLARIS (POLE STAR) TABLES, 199**  
FOR DETERMINING LATITUDE FROM SEXTANT ALTITUDE AND FOR AZIMUTH

LHA ARIES	120° - 129°	130° - 139°	140° - 149°	150° - 159°	160° - 169°	170° - 179°	180° - 189°	190° - 199°	200° - 209°	210° - 219°	220° - 229°	230° - 239°
0	0 53.9	1 01.8	1 09.7	1 17.2	1 24.1	1 30.3	1 35.5	1 39.6	1 42.5	1 44.1	1 44.3	1 43.2
1	54.7	02.6	10.4	17.9	24.8	30.9	36.0	40.0	42.7	44.2	44.3	43.0
2	55.5	03.4	11.2	18.6	25.4	31.4	36.4	40.3	42.9	44.3	44.2	42.8
3	56.3	04.2	12.0	19.3	26.1	32.0	36.9	40.6	43.1	44.3	44.1	42.6
4	57.1	05.0	12.7	20.0	26.7	32.5	37.3	40.9	43.3	44.4	44.0	42.4
5	0 57.8	1 05.8	1 13.5	1 20.7	1 27.3	1 33.0	1 37.7	1 41.2	1 43.5	1 44.4	1 43.9	1 42.1
6	58.6	06.6	14.2	21.4	27.9	33.5	38.1	41.5	43.6	44.4	43.8	41.9
7	0 59.4	07.3	15.0	22.1	28.5	34.1	38.5	41.8	43.8	44.4	43.7	41.6
8	1 00.2	08.1	15.7	22.8	29.1	34.6	38.9	42.0	43.9	44.4	43.5	41.3
9	01.0	08.9	16.4	23.5	29.7	35.0	39.3	42.3	44.0	44.4	43.4	41.0
10	1 01.8	1 09.7	1 17.2	1 24.1	1 30.3	1 35.5	1 39.6	1 42.5	1 44.1	1 44.3	1 43.2	1 40.7
Lat.	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>1</sub>
0	0.2	0.2	0.3	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6
10	.3	.3	.3	.4	.4	.5	.5	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6
20	.3	.4	.4	.4	.4	.5	.5	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6
30	.4	.4	.4	.5	.5	.5	.5	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6
40	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6
45	.5	.5	.5	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6
50	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6
55	.7	.7	.7	.7	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6
60	.8	.8	.7	.7	.7	.7	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6
62	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6
64	.9	.9	.8	.8	.8	.7	.7	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6
66	0.9	0.9	.9	.8	.8	.7	.7	.6	.6	.6	.6	.6
68	1.0	1.0	0.9	0.9	0.8	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6
Month	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>	<i>a</i> <sub>2</sub>
Jan.	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4
Feb.	.8	.8	.7	.7	.6	.6	.5	.5	.4	.4	.4	.3
Mar.	0.9	0.9	0.9	.8	.8	.7	.6	.6	.5	.5	.4	.4
Apr.	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.9	0.9	0.8	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.5	0.5
May	0.9	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.9	.9	.9	.8	.8	.7	.6
June	.8	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	1.0	.9	.9	.9	.9	.8	.8
July	0.7	0.7	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9
Aug.	.5	.5	.6	.6	.7	.7	.8	.8	.8	.9	.9	.9
Sept.	.3	.4	.4	.5	.5	.6	.6	.7	.7	.7	.8	.8
Oct.	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.5	0.5	0.6	0.6	0.7
Nov.	.2	.2	.2	.2	.2	.2	.2	.3	.3	.4	.5	.5
Dec.	0.3	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.3	0.4
Lat.	AZIMUTH											
0	359.2	359.2	359.3	359.3	359.4	359.5	359.6	359.7	359.8	0.0	0.1	0.2
20	359.2	359.2	359.2	359.3	359.4	359.5	359.6	359.7	359.8	0.0	0.1	0.3
40	359.0	359.0	359.1	359.1	359.2	359.3	359.5	359.6	359.8	0.0	0.1	0.3
50	358.8	358.8	358.9	359.0	359.1	359.2	359.4	359.6	359.8	0.0	0.2	0.4
55	358.7	358.7	358.7	358.8	359.0	359.1	359.3	359.5	359.7	0.0	0.2	0.4
60	358.5	358.5	358.6	358.7	358.8	359.0	359.2	359.5	359.7	0.0	0.2	0.5
65	358.2	358.2	358.3	358.4	358.6	358.8	359.1	359.4	359.6	359.9	0.3	0.6

**ILLUSTRATION**  
On 199: April 21 at  
23<sup>h</sup> 18<sup>m</sup> 56<sup>s</sup> UT in longitude  
W 37° 14' the apparent altitude  
(corrected for refraction), *H*<sub>0</sub>, of  
*Polaris* was 49° 31.6

From the daily pages:  
GHA Aries (23<sup>h</sup>) 194 47.0  
Increment (18<sup>m</sup> 56<sup>s</sup>) 4 44.8  
Longitude (west) -37 14  
LHA Aries 162 18

*H*<sub>0</sub> 49 31.6  
*a*<sub>0</sub> (argument 162° 18') 1 25.6  
*a*<sub>1</sub> (Lat 50° approx.) 0.6  
*a*<sub>2</sub> (April) 0.9  
Sum - 1° = Lat = 49 58.7

Table 23. A PAGE FROM 'POLARIS' TABLES

The fourth section at the bottom of the tables enables the navigator to determine very accurately, the direction or Azimuth to the Pole Star from his or her position at the time of the sight.

**EXAMPLE 35.** Let's do the following example:

Date : 30 August 199x.  
 DR : Lat 23°45' N, 15°30' W.  
 Clock : Set to UTC (GMT) but 4 s slow.  
 IE : 4' 'on' the scale.  
 Dip : 3 metres height of eye.  
 Time : Sextant sight at 19h22m16s.  
 Sextant : 23°37,2'

So: Clock time 19h22m16s  
 Error (+slow) + 4s  
 UTC (GMT) 19h22m20s

and;

GHA Aries 19h 263°44,3'  
 Increment 22m20s 5°35,9'  
 Total GHA Aries 269°20,2'

Therefore: GHA Aries 269°20,2'

DR Long (-W) - 15°30,0' W

LHA Aries 253°50,2' = 254° to the nearest degree.

But: Sextant angle 23°37,2'

IE -4,0'

Dip -3,0'

Apparent Altitude 23°30,2'

Main Corr'n (Star) -2,2'

(From Almanac's card, centre column; Refraction correction.)

Corrected AA: Ho= 23°28,0'

From the Almanac's Polaris Tables (third page) under the LHAs column headed '250°-259°' and opposite '4°' ( for 254°):

ao = 1° 35,2'  
 a1 = 0,5'  
 a2 = 0,9'  
 -1° = -1° 00,0'  
 Total corrections = 0° 36,6'

At the bottom of the page of the tables is a heading "Azimuth". This tells us the true direction of Polaris at the time of our sight. If we had checked to see the compass bearing to/from Polaris when we took the sight, we could convert the compass bearing to true - does it agree with the Azimuth. If it does not, there is deviation/the deviation card is not correct. Deviation can be calculated.

Latitude is therefore: Ho = 23°28,0'

Corrns = + 0°36,6'

Lat = 24°04,6' North

We can even make a work sheet for this type of Polaris sight - see the next page (page 103 - top).

**EXAMPLE 36.** Now follows our worked example using a work sheet.

The date is 5 December 199x, height of eye 7 metres, index error 3,5' 'on', clock error relative to UTC (GMT) is 7 seconds fast, DR Lat 47°45' N, Long 169°50' E, Sextant angle 47°59,1', time per clock 05h22m26s. Compass bearing to Polaris 015°, magnetic variation (assumed) 14° West. Course 265°M, speed 6 knots. What is the correct latitude ? What is the compass deviation, if any?

Note: Because the UTC (GMT) is 05h22 most people will tend to think in terms of morning twilight. As our Longitude is 169° East, this is in fact an evening twilight sight of Polaris.

Our worked solution, Solution 36, is at the bottom half of page 103. You try these. (Answers are in the Solutions section as Solutions 37 and 38.)

**EXAMPLE 37.** Date, 18 June 199x; DR 16°20' N, 67°35' W; Course 265°T, 6 knots, Log 2534. I.E. 4,0' 'off'; Eye height 3,5 m.; S.A. 15°43,5'; Time of sight 23 h 08 m 12 s by clock which is 31 s fast. Polaris direction 015°C. Assumed magnetic variation 14° West.

**EXAMPLE 38.** Date 4 December 199x, DR 48°05' N, 12°45' W; I.E. 0,8' 'on'; Eye height 2 m; S.A. 48°05'; Time of sight 17 h 06 m 27 s by clock which is 47 s slow. Course 310°T, speed 5 knots, Log 1245, compass direction to Polaris 013°C (variation assumed 16° West).



**NOTES**

## GREAT CIRCLE SAILING

A 'Great Circle' is, by definition, any circle around the earth whose centre is the centre of the earth. All meridians and the equator are therefore great circles, and any circle whose plane is at an angle to the plane of the equator and which has its centre at the centre of the earth, is a great circle.

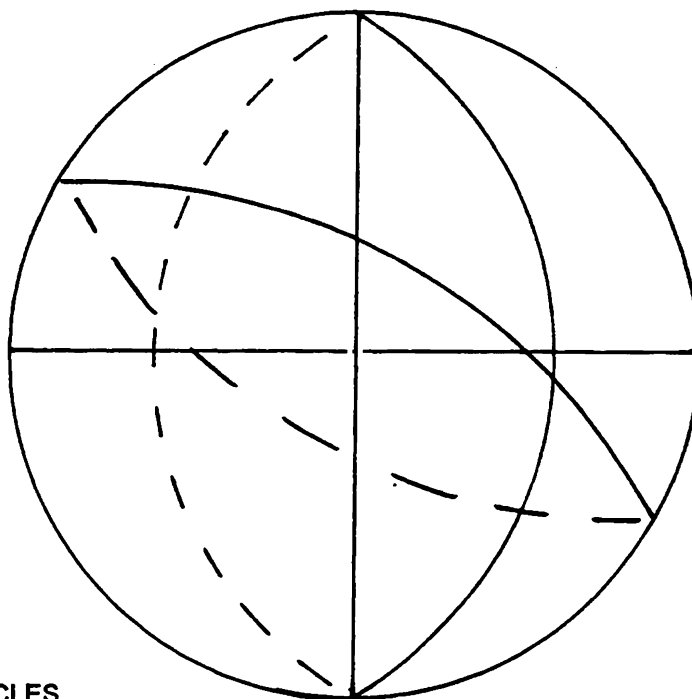


Fig. 64. GREAT CIRCLES

A nautical mile, by definition, is the length on the earth's surface of an arc of a great circle formed by an angle at the centre of the earth of 1'. The shortest route between two places on earth is the arc of a great circle which passes through both those places. (That is, providing you don't go the long way round!)

Unless one is sailing due east or west on the equator or due north or south on a meridian, one's course will curve so that as it crosses successive meridians, the angle formed between the course line and the meridian will be constantly changing. Look at the illustration in Figure 65 on page 106. Notice how the curve requires a turn towards the equator. Notice, too, that the navigator will have to update his vessel's position regularly and plot a new course to steer for the helmsman as the vessel follows the curve. The course direction changes.

For journeys of less than +/-500 miles a Rhumb Line course is steered. A Rhumb Line is a straight-line course between the start and end points of a journey, or one leg of a journey, and appears as a straight line on a Mercator Projection chart. No change of course to steer is necessary, but it is not the shortest route.

### The Logic

Think back to the discussion on the Spherical or Navigation Triangle (page 49 and onwards). 'Co altitude' (also called Zenith Distance) is the side of the navigation triangle from the observer to the GP of the celestial body (see Figure 65). The direction from the observer to the GP, the side of the spherical triangle, is  $Z_n$ , the Azimuth. The distance, observer to GP, is the ZD.  $ZD = 90^\circ - H_c$

The position of the GP was stated as its declination and GHA, which 'equate' to latitude and longitude. The observer's position was stated as (chosen) latitude and (chosen) longitude (which affected LHA). With these 'knowns' we are able to look up in the Sight Reduction Tables or calculate, using the Sine/Cosine formula method, the  $H_c$  and  $Z_n$ .

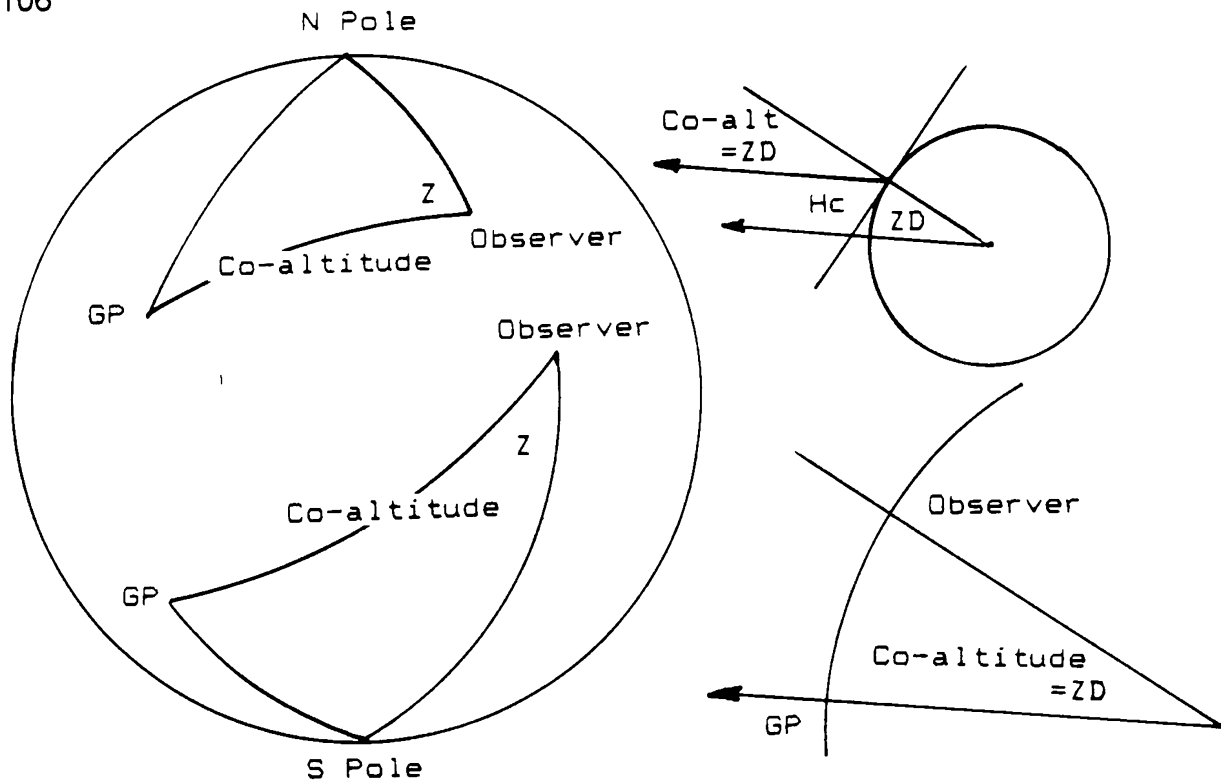


Fig. 65. CO-ALTITUDE IS THE DIRECTION ( $Z_n$ /AZIMUTH) AND DISTANCE TO THE GP.

If we are to replace the GP's position, declination and hour angle, with the latitude and longitude of our destination, we can get an  $H_c$ , which subtracted from  $90^\circ$ , is the distance from our position to the destination, and a  $Z_n$  which will be the great circle course to steer from our position towards the destination. As we move along this course, being on the arc of a great circle, the course to steer ( $Z_n$ ) will be changing (unless we are sailing east/west on the equator, or north/south) so regular updates of one's fix position and new calculations of the great circle course to steer will be necessary.

(Henton's Note: This is all very well in theory and in certain purists' view, such as those involved in ocean racing. In practice, cruising yachts do not normally concern themselves with great circle sailing because one tends to change course to sail on comfortable tacks depending on the wind direction. In addition, the difference in distance sailed between vessels crossing the ocean, one sailing a great circle course and the other a Rhumb Line course, is not regarded by most cruising skippers as significant. However, if for any reason (e.g. medical treatment) one has to get to a destination as quickly as possible, one may then go on to a great circle course).

### Mercator Projection

The Mercator Projection is the technique employed for the production of the charts most commonly used for day-to-day, and ocean crossing, navigation. See Figure 53 on page 59 and note that the horizontal scale around the equator is not changed but the vertical scale increases the further one moves from the equator. This is the method used to get a section of a sphere correctly drawn on a flat piece of paper with a known and measurable distortion so that both the horizontal and vertical scale proportions remain correct. The result is that the meridians are parallel lines running north/south and a course line ruled on this chart as a straight line will intersect all meridians with the same angle. The equivalent great circle course will appear as a curve, although it is the shorter route. See Figure 66 on the next page.

Gnomonic charts are used to show great circle courses as straight lines, and if a Rhumb Line course is to be added, it will appear as the curved line course. Note how the angles between the course line and the meridians are still constantly changing in the case of the great circle course but in the case of the Rhumb Line course the angles with the meridians remain the same. See Figure 67 on page 107.

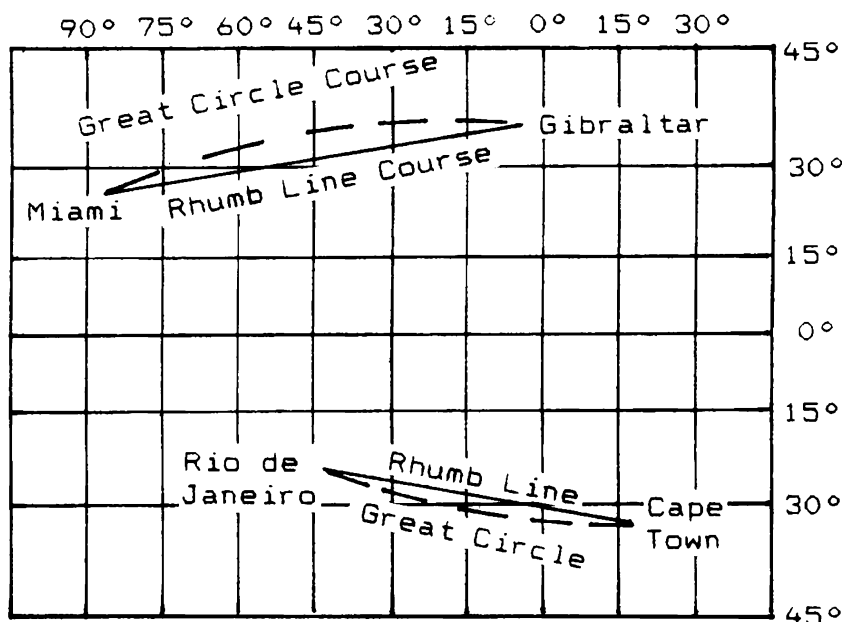


Fig. 66. RHUMB LINE AND GREAT CIRCLE COURSES ON A MERCATOR CHART

For great circle course-planning purposes, a special chart is available, namely chart 5029. It is intended for 'Air Navigation' but it is suitable for yachtsmen. The British Admiralty produce great circle planning charts as a series (e.g. 5095 A, B, C, 5096 A, B, C, 5097, etc.), each chart for different latitudes. A great circle planning chart allows the navigator to rule a straight line for the great circle course and then to take co-ordinates of latitude and longitude at regular distances along this course which can then be plotted on the Mercator chart as a curved course line (actually a series of Rhumb Line 'legs'). See Figure 66 above.

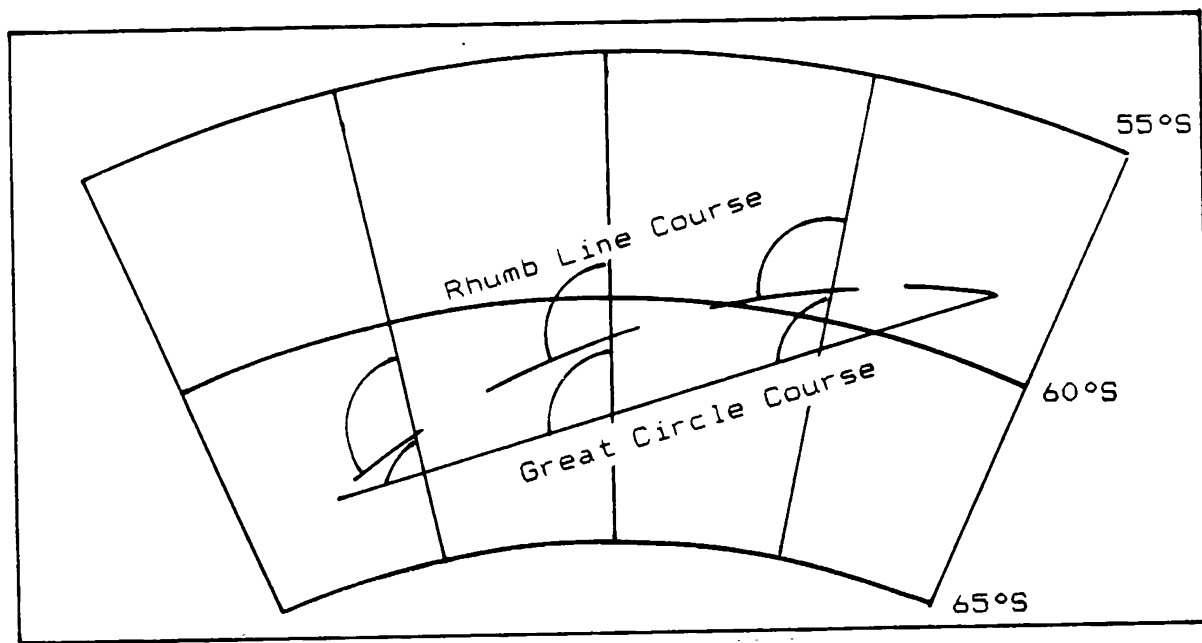


Fig. 67. A GNOMONIC GREAT CIRCLE PLANNING CHART, 5029.

We will do an example, once using the Air Sight Reduction Tables method, and then repeat the same example using the Sine/Cosine formula method.





**NOTE :**

If we had been coming from Rio to Cape Town, the LHA determination would have been as follows:

Longitude of Rio = 40°30' W

Longitude of Cape Town = 18°25' E

We need LHA. Look at it diagrammatically:

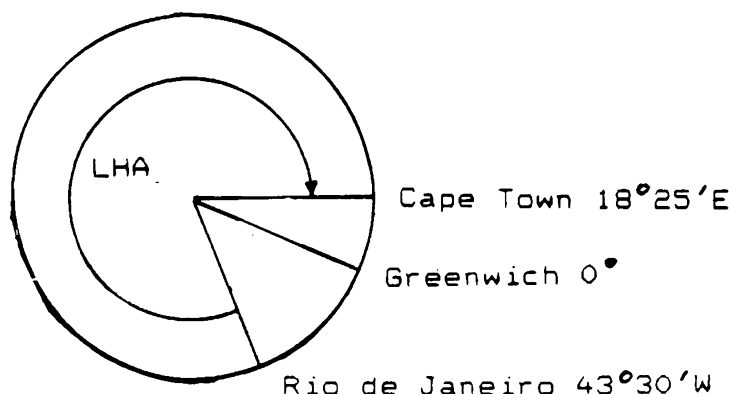


Fig. 68. LHA WHEN LONGITUDE EAST OR WEST.

From the above diagram:

Longitude West, from Rio to Cape Town:

$LHA = 360^\circ - 43^\circ 30' - 18^\circ 25' = 298^\circ 05' = 298^\circ$  (to the nearest  $^\circ$ ). In the Tables, where  $298^\circ$  appears in the right-hand column for LHA, the left column of LHA shows  $62^\circ$ . The sum of the two places' longitudes is  $62^\circ$  (to the nearest degree). So either one ( $62^\circ$  or  $298^\circ$ ) will get us on to the correct row in the Tables. But we need the correct LHA when we convert Z to  $Z_n$ :

Longitude East, Cape Town to Rio:

$LHA = 18^\circ 25' (E) + 43^\circ 30' (W) = 62^\circ$  (to the nearest degree).

Remember how we change Z to  $Z_n$ : (See page 52, Figures 47 to 50 for the explanation.)

If (Departure Point) Latitude is North:

$LHA > 180^\circ$ :  $Z_n = Z$

$LHA < 180^\circ$ :  $Z_n = 360^\circ - Z$

If (Departure Point) Latitude is South:

$LHA > 180^\circ$ :  $Z_n = 180^\circ - Z$

$LHA < 180^\circ$ :  $Z_n = 180^\circ + Z$

In our example, Rio to Cape Town, Lat is South and the LHA is  $298^\circ$  (i.e.  $LHA > 180^\circ$ ):

$$Z_n = 180^\circ - Z$$

$$\text{But } Z = \sin^{-1} \frac{(\cos 33,914^\circ \times \sin 62^\circ)}{\cos 35,850^\circ}$$

$$= \sin^{-1} \frac{(0,830 \times 0,883)}{0,811}$$

$$= \sin^{-1} \frac{0,733}{0,811}$$

$$= \sin^{-1} 0,904$$

$$= 65^\circ \text{ (to the nearest)}$$

Therefore  $Z_n = 180^\circ - 65^\circ = 115^\circ T$  -the True course to steer on leaving Rio for Cape Town.

If we use a work sheet, it will be so much easier.

We can use the Air Sight Reduction Tables method IF the destination (which we regard as Declination) is not greater than 30°; these tables do not allow for declinations greater than that. We must also make allowance, after the calculation, for the fact that our start point Lat has been rounded off to the nearest degree.

**WORK SHEET FOR GREAT CIRCLE SAILING: AIR SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES**

By Henton Jaaback, *Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc*

Departure Lat: .....°.....' N/S	Destination Lat: .....°.....' N/S
Departure Long: .....°.....' E/W	Destination Long: .....°.....' E/W
<p>Declination = Destination's Lat = .....°.....' N/S</p> <p>Chosen Lat = Departure's Lat = .....°..00..' N/S (or present Lat/latest fix's Lat). (Nearest°)</p> <p>SAME or CONTRARY? ..... In SAME or different [CONTRARY] hemispheres?</p> <p>LHA = Angle WESTWARD from departure's meridian/longitude to destination's longitude:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Departure Long 'E', Destination Long 'W'; LHA = E Long of Departure + W Long of Destination, or</li> <li>2. Departure Long 'E', Destination 'E' but less 'E'; LHA = E Long of Departure - W Long of Destination, or</li> <li>3. Departure Long 'E', Destination 'E' but further 'E'; LHA = {360° - (Destination's E long - Departure's E Long)}, or</li> <li>4. Departure Long 'W', Destination Long 'E'; LHA = {360° - (Destination's 'E' Long + Departure's 'W' Long)}, or</li> <li>5. Departure Long 'W', Destination Long 'W' but less 'W'; LHA = {360° - (Departure's 'W' Long - Destination's 'W' Long)}, or</li> <li>6. Departure Long 'W', Destination Long 'W' but further 'W'; LHA = Destination's 'W' Long - Departure's 'W' long.</li> </ol> <p>LHA = .....°.....'</p> <p>= .....°..00...' (To nearest whole number of degrees)</p>	
<p><b>Hc → ZD (= DISTANCE)</b></p> <p>Tables Hc value .....°.....' Select 'Tables' page for Chosen Lat/Dec/SAME or CONTRARY/LHA as obtained above.</p> <p>'d' (+/-.....) ..... For use with mins of Dec in Table 5 to get next line...</p> <p>d Correction (+/-) ..... From Table 5-see above lines</p> <p><b>Hc Required</b> ..... Sum/difference of above.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">90° 00', 0'</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Hc - .....°.....'</p> <p style="text-align: center;">ZD = .....°.....'</p> <p style="text-align: center;">ZD's degrees x 60 = .....'</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Plus ZD's minutes = + .....'</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Minutes = n.m. = ..... n.m.</p> <p>NB: Make allowance for the rounding off to whole numbers of Departure Lat and LHA (the effect on Longitude); add or subtract minutes/miles in proportion.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Distance = ..... n.m.</b></p>	
<p><b>Zn</b></p> <p>Tables value for Z: .....°.....' Found with Hc and d in Sight Reduction Tables.</p> <p>Convert to Zn = .....°T. See the tables, outside the page margin, top and bottom left side,</p> <p>e.g. Top: "(If DR) N Lat, LHA &gt; 180°, Zn = Z; LHA &lt; 180°, Zn = 360° - Z."</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Bottom: "(If DR) S Lat, LHA &gt; 180°, Zn=180°- Z; LHA &lt; 180°, Zn = 180° + Z."</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Course to steer when leaving Destination (or from latest fix/present position)</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Steer = .....°True</b></p>	

Work Sheet 8.

We can opt to use the Sine/Cosine method which has a double bonus advantage. We do not have to round off the start point latitude, and therefore no estimating/allowance adjustment is required after the calculation; and there is no limit to the destination latitude (Declination). So the results will be accurate.

**WORK SHEET FOR GREAT CIRCLE SAILING:SINE/COSINE METHOD**

By Henton Jaaback, *Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc*

Departure Lat: .....°.....' N/S	Destination Lat: .....°.....' N/S
Departure Long: .....°.....' E/W	Destination Long: .....°.....' E/W
Declination = Destination's Lat = .....°.....' N/S	
DR Lat = Departure,s Lat = .....°.....' N/S (or present Lat/latest fix's Lat).	
LHA = Angle WESTWARD from departure's meridian/longitude to destination's longitude:	
1. Departure Long 'E', Destination Long 'W';	
LHA = E Long of Departure + W Long of Destination, or	
2. Departure Long 'E', Destination 'E' but less 'E';	
LHA = E Long of Departure - W Long of Destination, or	
3. Departure Long 'E', Destination 'E' but further 'E';	
LHA = {360° - (Destination's E long - Departure's E Long)}, or	
4. Departure Long 'W', Destination Long 'E';	
LHA = {360° - (Destination's 'E' Long + Departure's 'W' Long)}, or	
5. Departure Long 'W', Destination Long 'W' but less 'W';	
LHA = {360° - (Departure's 'W' Long - Destination's 'W' Long)}, or	
6. Departure Long 'W', Destination Long 'W' but further 'W';	
LHA = Destination's 'W' Long - Departure's 'W' long.	
LHA = .....°.....'	
<b><u>DISTANCE VIA GREAT CIRCLE ROUTE</u></b>	
Distance = ZD = 90° 00,0' - Hc = _____ n.m.	
NB: Dec and Lat are negative if South.	
$Hc = \sin^{-1} \{ (\sin Dec \times \sin Lat) + (\cos Dec \times \cos Lat \times \cos LHA) \}$ $= \sin^{-1} \{ (\sin \quad \circ \quad ' \times \sin \quad \circ \quad ' ) + (\cos \quad \circ \quad ' \times \cos \quad \circ \quad ' \times \cos \quad \circ \quad ' ) \}$ $= \sin^{-1} \{ (\sin \quad , \quad \circ \times \sin \quad , \quad \circ ) + (\cos \quad , \quad \circ \times \cos \quad , \quad \circ \times \cos \quad , \quad \circ ) \}$ $= \sin^{-1} \{ ( \quad \times \quad ) + ( \quad \times \quad ) \}$ $= \sin^{-1} \{ \quad + \quad \}$ $= \sin^{-1} \{ \quad \}$ $= \quad , \quad \circ = \quad \circ \quad , \quad ' \}$	
ZD = 90° 00,0' - Hc = _____	
ZD's degrees x 60 = _____	
Plus ZD's minutes = + _____	
Minutes = n.m. = _____ <b><u>n.m. = Great Circle Distance</u></b>	
<b><u>Great Circle COURSE TO STEER</u></b>	
Zn = Azimuth = direction from observer (place of Departure/present position) to GP (Destination)	
If LHA > 180° : Zn = cos <sup>-1</sup> X	
If LHA < 180° : Zn = 360° - cos <sup>-1</sup> X <b><u>Zn = Course to Steer = _____ °T</u></b>	
Where X = $\frac{(\sin Dec \times \cos Lat) - (\cos Dec \times \cos LHA \times \sin Lat)}{(\cos Hc)}$ NB:Dec/Lat are '-' if South.	
$= \frac{(\sin \quad \circ \quad , \quad ' \times \cos \quad \circ \quad , \quad ' ) - (\cos \quad \circ \quad , \quad ' \times \cos \quad \circ \quad , \quad ' \times \sin \quad \circ \quad , \quad ' )}{(\cos \quad \circ \quad , \quad ' )}$ $= \frac{(\sin \quad , \quad \circ \times \cos \quad , \quad \circ ) - (\cos \quad , \quad \circ \times \cos \quad , \quad \circ \times \sin \quad , \quad \circ )}{(\cos \quad , \quad \circ )}$ $= \frac{( \quad \times \quad ) - ( \quad \times \quad \times \quad )}{( \quad )}$ $= \frac{( \quad ) - ( \quad )}{( \quad )} = \frac{( \quad )}{( \quad )} = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$	
BUT: If X > +1, make X = 1; If X < -1, make X = -1. (i.e. X must be between -1 and +1.)	

This method has only one disadvantage; allowance has to be made after the calculation for the fact that the start point latitude was rounded off to the nearest degree.

**WORK SHEET FOR GREAT CIRCLE SAILING: ALMANAC SRTs METHOD**

*By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc*

Departure/Start/Present Location/Last Fix: Destination (Treat as 'Declination')	=	°	,	'N/S,	°	,	'E/W;
	=	°	,	'N/S,	°	,	'E/W.
<b>DESTINATION LAT (=DECLINATION)</b>		N/S	°	,	'		
<b>Chosen Latitude</b>		°00,0'	N/S				Nearest whole degree.
<b>SAME or CONTRARY ?</b>							Dec and Lat, SAME hemisphere?
<p><b>LHA</b>                  LHA = Angle WESTWARD from departure's meridian/longitude to destination's longitude:                  1. Departure Long 'E', Destination Long 'W';                      LHA = E Long of Departure + W Long of Destination, or                  2. Departure Long 'E', Destination 'E' but less 'E';                      LHA = E Long of Departure - W Long of Destination, or                  3. Departure Long 'E', Destination 'E' but further 'E';                      LHA = {360° - (Destination's E long - Departure's E Long)}, or                  4. Departure Long 'W', Destination Long 'E';                      LHA = {360° - (Destination's 'E' Long + Departure's 'W' Long)}, or                  5. Departure Long 'W', Destination Long 'W' but less 'W';                      LHA = {360° - (Departure's 'W' Long - Destination's 'W' Long)}, or                  6. Departure Long 'W', Destination Long 'W' but further 'W';                      LHA = Destination's 'W' Long - Departure's 'W' long.                      LHA = .....°.....'                      = .....°...00...' (to the whole nearest degree.)</p>							
<p><b>USE OF SIGHT REDUCTION TABLE (SRT)</b> <span style="float:right;"><i>By Henton Jaaback</i></span>                  1. Select SRT page with above 'Chosen Lat'                      Under Lat , opposite LHA (as above):                      [A°= .....° (nearest whole degree), A= ..... ]                      B = .....° , Z1 = .....° (B/Z1 '-' if 90°&lt;LHA&lt;270°)                      Dec = +/- .....° 'N/S ('+' SAME, '-' CONTRARY)                      F = +/- .....°                      (F°= +/- .....° [nearest degree], F= ..... )                  2. SRT page with A° value as column heading. Under A° opposite F°; H = .....°                      P° = .....° (nearest whole degree), Z2 = .....°                      Hc = .....° , Z1 = .....° + or - as for B. <span style="float:right;"><b>IF DR in N LAT:</b></span>                      Corrn 1 = .....° , Z2 = .....° (If F°-' , use 180°-Z2). <span style="float:right;">If LHA&gt;180° Zn=Z</span>                      Corrn 2 = .....° , <span style="float:right;">(Z2 is '-' if F°&gt;90°). If LHA&lt;180° Zn=360°-Z</span>                      Hc = .....° , Z = .....° ignore '-' <span style="float:right;"><b>IF DR in S LAT:</b></span>                      <span style="float:right;">If LHA&gt;180° Zn=180°-Z</span>                      <span style="float:right;">If LHA&lt;180° Zn=180°+Z</span>                      90° 00 , 0'                      -Hc = .....° <span style="float:right;"><b>GC Course = Zn = .....°T</b></span>                      ZD = .....°                      ZD degrees x 60, + ZD minutes = ..... , /n.m. = <b>GC Distance</b></p>							

Work Sheet 10.

Here are some exercises for you to try:

**EXAMPLE 40.** You are about to leave Gibraltar waters en route for the island of St Thomas in the Caribbean. What is the great circle course to steer from the western exit of the Mediterranean Sea 36°05' North, 5°30' West to the distant island at 18° 15' North, 65° 00' West? What will be the initial great circle course to steer? (See 'Solutions' in Part 2, Solution 40, which - has used the Air Sight Reduction Tables method, i.e. Work Sheet 2.)

(In practice it seems crazy to attempt to sail this route, initially against the currents and prevailing winds, and then into the middle of the 'Azores High' where good sailing wind is rare. The sailing yachts will prefer to sail in the 'right' direction around the High, in which case a series of shorter great circle courses may be considered. If one is in a powered vessel however, the great circle course is the best.)

**EXAMPLE 41.** Having spent the last two years sailing around the Caribbean, Bahamas, and south-eastern USA coast, passing through the Panama Canal and sailing up the west coast, you are now ready to depart from San Diego headed for Tokyo. The two sets of co-ordinates are:

San Diego      32° 45' North, 117° 15' West.

Tokyo            35° 30' North, 140° 00' East.

What is the great circle course to steer on leaving San Diego and what is the great circle distance? (See 'Solutions' in Part 2, Solution 41 - it uses the sine/cosine method, i.e. Work Sheet 10.)

(The comment after the first question, above, applies here too! One would be sailing against the current and prevailing westerlies. Both of these two questions are therefore very definitely 'hypothetical'!)

**NOTES**



magnetic bearing and the compass bearing will be the deviation - if the compass number is bigger it is west, the deviation is west, it must be added to the magnetic reading to become the correct compass bearing. If it is a smaller number it is east, we must subtract it from the magnetic number to get the correct compass equivalent.

With deviation values for ship's headings every 30° around the compass rose we are able to make up or correct our deviation card or graph.

**THE RISING OR SETTING SUN'S AMPLITUDE**

Some reference books have what are called Amplitude Tables. These tables tell one, depending on one's latitude and the date, how many degrees north or south of east the sun will appear at sunrise, or how many degrees off west it will be at sunset. If, at a place on a date the amplitude was seen to be 6° North at sunrise, it means it will be 6° north of east which will be 084° True. By adding 'west' variation we get what the compass bearing to the sun will be if there is no deviation. Any difference noted when taking the bearing to the rising sun will be the deviation (on that heading). We can do a similar check with the setting sun.

To be strictly correct, the bearing by compass from/to the sun at sunrise or sunset should be when the bottom arc of the sun's circumference is one radius (half the sun's diameter) above the horizon.

The date enables us to find the declination on that day, to the nearest degree. Our Latitude can be rounded off to the nearest whole number of degrees. With these two numbers, we can look up the tables, (see Table 24, page 117), to find an angle which is called the Amplitude of the Celestial Body (i.e. the sun in our case).

The 'Rising Amplitude' refers to the angle, as seen by the observer (you/the navigator) between true east and the direction of the sun, north or south of true east (the sun rises in the east). If we know this angle, we can determine the true direction of the sun in terms of the 360° notation. For example, if our DR is 28°15' N, 57°50' W on 18 June at sunrise, we can look up the Declination of the sun in the Almanac and see that it is, to the nearest degree, N 23°. Our latitude to the nearest degree is 28°N. When we look up the Amplitude Tables, we see (next page) the angle is 26° (when Dec is 23° and Lat is 28°).

(Note that whether Dec and/or Lat are North or South is of no relevance in the make up of the tables.)

This means the direction (True) to the sun from that latitude, is 26° north (because Declination is North) of east, i.e. 26° north of 090° = 064°. If the Declination had been South, this angle, and therefore the direction to the sun, would be south of east, i.e. 116° True (090° + 26°).

Knowing the true direction and the magnetic variation from the chart for the area, we can compare the magnetic direction with the observed compass direction to the sun at that time - if the compass and magnetic directions are the same, there is no deviation. If they are not the same, there is Deviation; the Deviation is the difference between the two values. If the compass value is the larger, the Deviation is 'West'. If the magnetic number is the larger, the Deviation is 'East'.

The Amplitude Angle of the setting sun can be as useful a check of your compass deviation. From the same DR and date above, i.e. when the Amplitude Angle is 26°. the true direction to the sun will be 244° if Declination is South (270° - 26°), or 296° if Declination is North (270° + 26°).

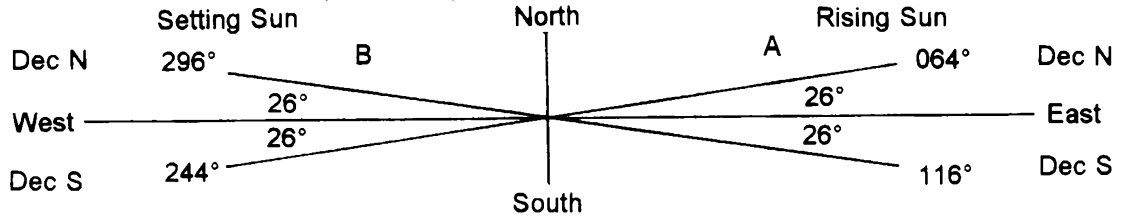


Fig. 69. TRUE DIRECTION OF THE RISING (A) AND THE SETTING (B) SUN.



## AMPLITUDE OF THE RISING AND SETTING SUN: LATITUDES UP TO 57° N/S

By Henton Jaaback

Lat °	Declination° (nearest degree) North or South																							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
0-5	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
6	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
7	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
8	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
10	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
11	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	24
12	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	21	22	23	24
13	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
14	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	14	14	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
15	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
16	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
17	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
18	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
19	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
20	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	24	25
21	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	22	23	24	25
22	0	1	2	3	4	5	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	20	21	22	23	24	25
23	0	1	2	3	4	5	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
24	0	1	2	3	4	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
25	0	1	2	3	4	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	26
26	0	1	2	3	4	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	24	25	26
27	0	1	2	3	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	23	24	25	26
28	0	1	2	3	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	21	22	23	24	25	26
29	0	1	2	3	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	13	14	15	16	17	18	20	21	22	23	24	25	27
30	0	1	2	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	20	21	22	23	25	26	27
31	0	1	2	4	5	6	7	8	9	11	12	13	14	15	16	18	19	20	21	22	24	25	26	27
32	0	1	2	4	5	6	7	8	9	11	12	13	14	15	17	18	19	20	21	23	24	25	26	27
33	0	1	2	4	5	6	7	8	10	11	12	13	14	16	17	18	19	20	22	23	24	25	27	28
34	0	1	2	4	5	6	7	9	10	11	12	13	15	16	17	18	19	21	22	23	24	26	27	28
35	0	1	3	4	5	6	7	9	10	11	12	14	15	16	17	18	20	21	22	23	25	26	27	29
36	0	1	3	4	5	6	7	9	10	11	12	14	16	16	17	19	20	21	23	24	25	26	28	29
37	0	1	3	4	5	6	8	9	10	11	13	14	16	16	18	19	20	22	23	24	25	27	28	29
38	0	1	3	4	5	6	8	9	10	12	13	14	16	17	18	19	21	22	23	24	26	27	28	30
39	0	1	3	4	5	6	8	9	10	12	13	14	16	17	18	20	21	22	23	25	26	28	29	30
40	0	1	3	4	5	7	8	9	11	12	13	14	16	17	18	20	21	22	24	25	27	28	29	31
41	0	1	3	4	5	7	8	9	11	12	13	15	16	17	19	20	21	23	24	26	27	28	30	31
42	0	1	3	4	5	7	8	9	11	12	14	15	16	18	19	20	22	23	25	26	27	29	30	32
43	0	1	3	4	6	7	8	10	11	12	14	15	17	18	19	21	22	24	25	26	28	29	31	32
44	0	1	3	4	6	7	8	10	11	13	14	15	17	18	20	21	23	24	25	27	28	30	31	33
45	0	1	3	4	6	7	9	10	11	13	14	16	17	19	20	22	23	24	26	27	29	31	32	34
46	0	1	3	4	6	7	9	10	12	13	15	16	17	19	20	22	23	25	26	28	30	31	33	34
47	0	2	3	4	6	7	9	10	12	13	15	16	18	19	21	22	24	25	27	29	30	32	33	35
48	0	2	3	5	6	8	9	11	12	14	15	17	18	20	21	23	24	26	28	29	31	32	34	36
49	0	2	3	5	6	8	9	11	12	14	15	17	19	20	22	23	25	27	28	30	31	33	35	37
50	0	2	3	5	6	8	9	11	13	14	16	17	19	21	22	24	25	27	29	30	32	34	36	37
51	0	2	3	5	6	8	10	11	13	14	16	18	19	20	23	24	26	28	29	31	33	35	37	38
52	0	2	3	5	7	8	10	11	13	15	16	18	20	20	23	25	27	28	30	32	34	36	38	39
53	0	2	3	5	7	8	10	12	13	15	17	19	20	22	24	26	27	29	31	33	35	37	39	41
54	0	2	3	5	7	9	10	12	14	15	17	19	21	23	25	26	28	30	32	34	36	38	40	42
55	0	2	4	5	7	9	11	12	14	16	18	19	21	24	25	27	29	30	33	35	37	39	41	43
56	0	2	4	5	7	9	11	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	25	27	29	30	33	36	38	40	42	44
57	0	2	4	5	7	9	11	12	14	16	19	20	22	25	26	28	30	31	34	37	39	41	43	45

Table 24.

**Henton Jaaback at Yachtmasters' - where safety and accuracy are paramount.**

In practice we all know that a yacht 'zig zags' at sea - it is impossible to keep her on a perfectly straight course, and the bigger the swell or rougher the sea, the worse it is. So this exercise could only be done in relatively calm conditions.

A well adjusted compass will have no or small amounts of deviation which for practical purposes can be ignored - we cannot steer to an accuracy of a degree or two anyway. DO NOT leave on a voyage when the vessel's compass deviation involves large numbers. Something is wrong. Get it professionally checked.

**NOTES**

## USE OF MARINE SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES

Sight Reduction Tables allow the navigator to look up the Hc and Zn applicable to the sight. The Hc is compared with Ho to get the Intercept, and the Zn is also needed for the plotting.

During the process of resolving a sight for the LOP, we determine the Declination and the LHA, and along the way we decide on the Assumed or Chosen Latitude, the calculation reveals the Chosen Longitude to be used, and we see whether 'SAME' or 'CONTRARY' applies. All these elements are common to any sight calculation we have done (except Meridian Passage).

With Air Sight Reduction Tables, the navigator turns to the page in the Tables applicable to the Chosen Latitude. With the Marine Sight Reduction Tables, the book (volume - one per 15° of latitude) is chosen according to the navigator's latitude, and the page is selected according to the LHA (as well as 'SAME' or 'CONTRARY', and Assumed or Chosen Latitude). See the example page, Table 25, from the Marine Sight Reduction Tables on page 120.

Note that the column headings are Latitude (the Assumed or Chosen Latitude) and that the horizontal rows are Declination (whole numbers of degrees only). Notice also that the relationship between Z and ZN appears, just as it did in the Air Sight Reduction Tables, above the top margin (for 'Lat North') and below the bottom margin (for 'Lat South'). We are able, therefore to read off the Hc, d, and Z. Converting Z to Zn is the same as the Air Tables.

Using the 'd' number (+ or -) and with the balance of the Declination (the minutes part of the Declination) we look inside the front and back covers of the book, at the 'Interpolation Table'. The horizontal rows represent the increment of Declination. An example Interpolation Table is on page 121 (Table 26).

Next to the Declination increment selected, we see five columns of 'tens' corrections, then a 'Decimals' column, and then ten columns for the units. If our Declination increment was 24,7' and the 'd' number from the tables was +48,3', we would look in the front section, right hand page, opposite 24,7' in the bold/dark print under the 'Dec Inc' column. Then under the 'Tens' section, under 40' for the 48,3', we see 16,5' - call it 'd1', i.e. correction 1, or  $d1 = + 16,5'$ . ('+' because 48,3 for the value of 'd' in the Tables, was '+').

The second correction for 'd', or 'd2', uses the units and the decimals part of the value for d from the Tables, i.e. 8,3'. Opposite the 24,7' we go to the right to the decimals column, then up, or down if nearer, to the nearest decimal of the same value as the one we have i.e. ,3. Then go further right along the ,3 row to under the 8 units to get 3,4'. 3,4' is '+' for the same reason as d1.

Hc required = Hc from the Tables,  $\pm d1 \pm d2$ .

('Double Second Difference' tables - right hand column - involve very small corrections when Hc is over 60° - we ignore them.)

A sample Work Sheet (Work Sheet 11) for use with the Marine Sight Reduction Tables is shown on page 122. Note that the only difference, when compared to the Air Sight Reduction Tables, is in the Hc block.

A PAGE FROM MARINE SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES

42°, 318° L.H.A.

LATITUDE SAME NAME AS DECLINATION

N. Lat. { L.H.A. greater than 180° ..... Zn=Z  
L.H.A. less than 180° ..... Zn=360°-Z

Main table with columns for Declination (Dec.) and Local Hour Angle (L.H.A.) from 15° to 22°. Each cell contains three values representing sight reduction data.

42°, 318° L.H.A.

LATITUDE SAME NAME AS DECLINATION

Table 25.

INTERPOLATION TABLES: SAMPLE PAGE FROM INSIDE FRONT COVER

INTERPOLATION TABLE

Main interpolation table with columns for Dec. Inc., Altitude Difference (d), Tens, Decimals, Units, Double Second Diff. and Corr., and a second identical set of columns on the right.

The Double-Second-Difference correction (Corr.) is always to be added to the tabulated altitude.

Table 26.

**MARINE SIGHT REDUCTION TABLES WORK SHEET; ALL CELESTIAL BODIES**

*By Henton Jaaback, Yachtmaster Ocean Services cc*

Date: IE: +/- , '(-On, +Off); Eye Ht: ft/m; Clock error: h m s(Fast/Slow?)			
Course: °T/M/C; Speed: kns; Celestial Body/ies-UL/LL:			
Log			
DR Lat	° 'N/S	° 'N/S	° 'N/S
DR Long	° 'E/W	° 'E/W	° 'E/W
Chosen Lat	° 00,0'N/S	° 00,0'N/S	° 00,0'N/S
<b>TIME</b> Clock time of sight	h m s	h m s	h m s
Clock error relative to UTC (-fast, + slow) ±	h m s	h m s	h m s
<b>Corrected UTC time of sight</b> =	h m s	h m s	h m s
<b>LHA</b> GHA as at day, hour of sight: Al'nac	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
Increments for mins/secs; Yellow pages +	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
v ( ? ) ±Planets; +Moon. Corr.(Yellow p's) ±	( ) , ' , ''	( ) , ' , ''	( ) , ' , ''
Total GHA as at exact time of sight =	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
-360° if nec; GHA to be between 0°/ 360° -	° 00,0'	° 00,0'	° 00,0'
GHA Required =	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
SHA of star +	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
GHA of celestial body sighted =	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
Chosen Longitude (+E, -W) ±	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
LHA Required =	° 00,0'	° 00,0'	° 00,0'
+/- 360° if necessary ±	° 00,0'	° 00,0'	° 00,0'
<b>LHA of celestial body sighted</b> =	° 00,0'	° 00,0'	° 00,0'
<b>Declination</b> day/hr of sight; next to GHA =	N/S ° , ' , ''	N/S ° , ' , ''	N/S ° , ' , ''
(d = ?)factor; bottom of/or in moon column 'd'	(d = , )	(d = , )	(d = , )
Corrn;Yellow p's(mins)(+ if Dec increasing) ±	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
<b>TOTAL DECLINATION</b> at time of sight =	N/S ° , ' , ''	N/S ° , ' , ''	N/S ° , ' , ''
Lat/Dec <b>SAME</b> or <b>CONTRARY</b> (N/S) ?			
<b>Hc:</b> SRTs,'LHA' page,(Lat° column,opp Dec°)	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
(d± ?) (use with Dec's mins, Interpolat.Table.)	(d =+/- )	(d =+/- )	(d =+/- )
d1, First correction, from Interpolation Table. ±	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
d2,Second correction, Interpolation Table. ±	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
<b>TOTAL Hc</b> (Transfer to Intercept, ↓) =	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
<b>Z → Zn</b> Top of SRT page if Lat North.	Z = °	Z = °	Z = °
Bottom of SRT page if Lat South.	Zn = °	Zn = °	Zn = °
<b>Ho:</b> Sextant Angle (SA/Hs)Up./Low. Limb =	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
IE (- On, + Off) ±	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
DIP (Eye ht; Almanac card/Page A2) -	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
Apparent Altitude (AA) =	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
Main corrn (Almanac card), OR ±	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
Moon corrn (Back of Almanac) +	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
Planet corrn (Almanac card) +	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
Moon HP corrn (Back of Almanac) +	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
Moon only, if UL, corrn (-30,0' if UL) -	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
<b>TRUE ALTITUDE / Ho</b> Ho =	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
<b>Intercept:</b> Hc =	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
Intcpt (Difference); Ho - Hc or Hc - Ho. ~	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''	° , ' , ''
<b>TOWARDS</b> or <b>AWAY?</b> If Ho>Hc, Towards			

Work Sheet 11.

**NOTES**